



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

EducT

918.52

804



Harvard College Library

FROM

.....
.....
.....



3 2044 097 061 865



Horatio S. White.

April 1869,

LATIN LESSONS,
WITH
EXERCISES IN PARSING;
INTRODUCTORY TO
BULLIONS' LATIN GRAMMAR
AND
LATIN READER.

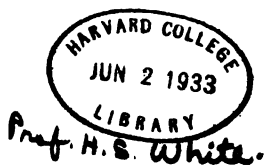
~~~~~  
**By GEORGE SPENCER, A. M.**  
**PRINCIPAL OF THE UTICA ACADEMY.**  
~~~~~

SEVENTH EDITION.

NEW-YORK:
PUBLISHED BY PRATT, WOODFORD & Co.

.....
1852.

EducT 918.52.804
L



Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by
GEORGE SPENCER,
In the Clerk's Office of the Northern District of New-York.

PREFACE.

To most of those who commit to memory the *outlines*, merely, of the entire Latin Grammar, before any practice is had in *parsing*, the progress is so slow and unsatisfactory, that very many become discouraged and abandon classical studies altogether. Teachers have met with so much difficulty in urging forward beginners in the study of Latin, upon the old methods of instruction, that there are but few, who do not use some work similar to the one here offered to the public. This difficulty will continue to increase as our country advances in wealth; and pupils, consequently, commence the study of this Language at an earlier age. In accordance with these views, and as it is important that the principles of an elementary book should be expressed in the language of the text-book upon which it is based, these "Lessons" have been prepared.

Dr. Bullions' Latin Grammar has been selected, among others of excellent character in use, for two reasons. First, because the others have already been introduced with primary books; and secondly, from the consideration, that the rapidly increasing confidence manifested in his Grammar, among scholars and practical instructors, seems to bespeak for it a general and permanent reputation.

This work consists of two parts, divided into lessons of suitable length for an ordinary recitation. The general design is maintained, embracing some portion of the Grammar, illustrated by exercises adapted to fix in the mind the principle acquired, at each step of the student's progress. The exercises for turning Latin into English, as

far as the verb *Sum*, have been given without regard to the principles of Latin arrangement ; after which, selections have been made from approved classical authors. Following these are Exercises for turning English into Latin, which will serve to impress on the mind the signification of Latin words, and the forms of the different parts of speech.

Another exercise will be found in these Lessons which has not been introduced into any other used in this country, that of tracing, so far as is practicable, the derivation of our own language from the Latin. Although this advantage is often urged as an argument for the study of the dead languages, it has seemed to the author that but little attention is given to it, for the reason that the practice is not pursued from the outset, and the habit formed at an early stage of the student's course.

PART FIRST contains the leading principles of Etymology, with the observations and exceptions of frequent occurrence. Attention is respectfully called to the *analysis* of the *verb*, which, it is believed, will be found extremely simple and easy of comprehension.

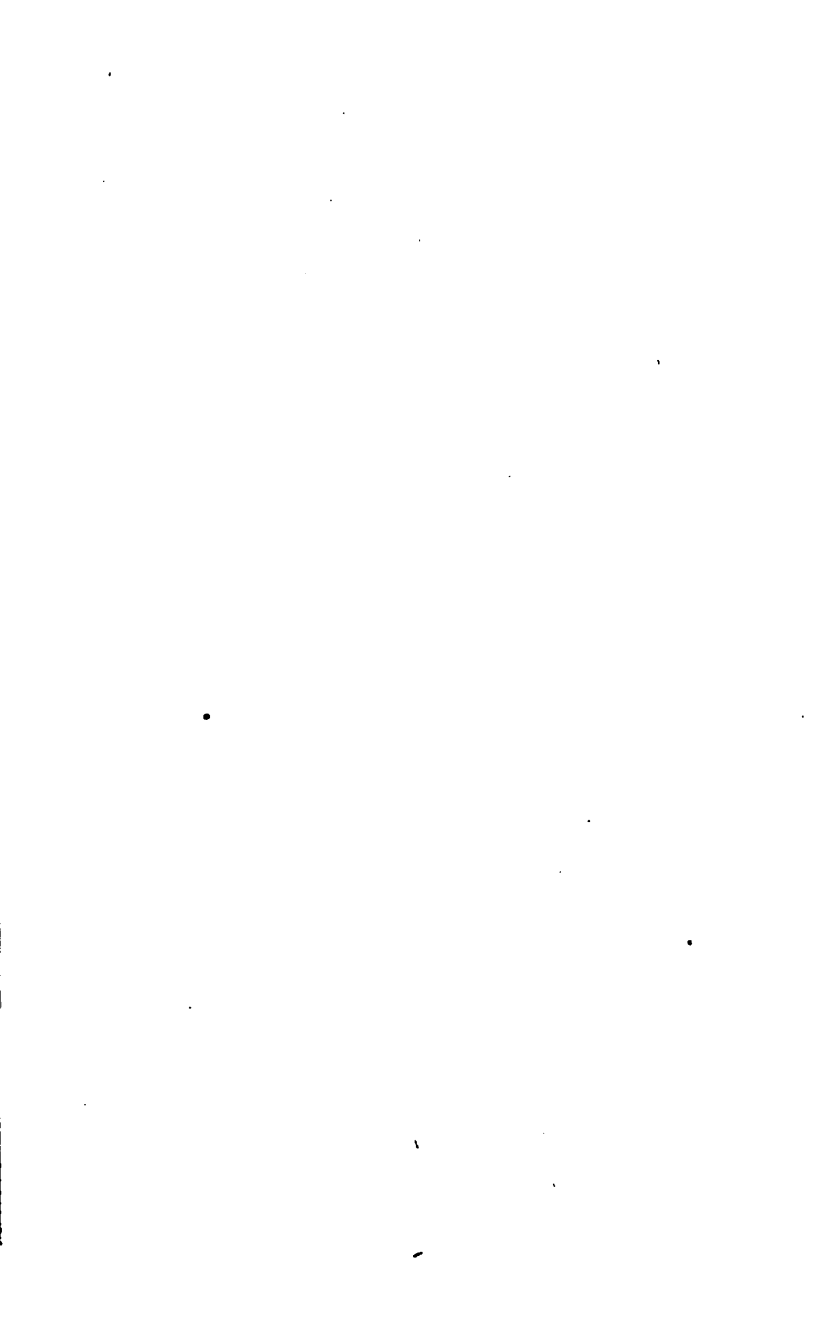
PART SECOND consists of the general Rules of Syntax, together with the more common exceptions, abundantly illustrated ; and the History of Joseph taken from the " *Historia Sacra*." It is thought by those who are competent to advise on the subject, that, after having read and reviewed, *thoroughly*, all that precedes, the reading of that history will prepare pupils for commencing the Latin Reader, at the Fables, thus saving the expense of additional elementary books.

From what has been said it will readily be perceived, that this work cannot take the place of a Latin Grammar, and that, while it contains all the leading principles of the

PREFACE.

Grammar, it is intended only to prepare the way for its more critical study as students advance.

It only remains to say that no labor has been spared to maintain the most perfect order and perspicuity in the arrangement, and to make the study of Latin easy and inviting, even to the youngest pupil. How far this desirable object has been secured, a candid public will decide.



HINTS

FOR THE USE OF THESE "LESSONS."

IN throwing out a few suggestions upon the proper method of teaching these lessons, it is not expected that experienced instructors will feel inclined to give up that which they may already have found successful, and adopt any new plan that may be offered. To such, however, as are without experience, they may not be altogether unacceptable.

1. Let it be borne in mind that *everything* in this work should be thoroughly understood and committed to memory.

2. Teachers should first endeavor to make themselves perfectly *familiar* with the lessons of the day, a preparation indispensable, if they would impart spirit and interest to their recitation.

3. The directions for reviews given under the head of each lesson should be strictly followed, unless they should be found insufficient, or teachers should feel the necessity of the pupil's retracing his steps more frequently than the directions require.

4. In the "advance" the principles, paradigms, observations, remarks, and exceptions, should be recited, and

the exercise for translating Latin into English read *verbatim*, and parsed *throughout*, if time will permit.

5. In the "review" the Latin should be *pronounced*, merely, after which, *with books closed*, the pupil should recite the principles, paradigms, &c., Latin for the sentences in English, and the questions on the derivation of words.

6. Correct pronunciation, and the rules of quantity and accent, should be insisted on from the first recitation.

7. Whatever plan of parsing the teacher may adopt, should be pursued in the same order. If the pupil is parsing a verb, something like the following plan might be followed:

Transitive or intransitive, (if irregular or deponent, mention,)—conjugation,—conjugate,—voice, (if passive, conjugate,)—mood,—tense,—synopsis of the mood as far as the tense,—person and number,—agreement,—Rule.

8. When the class have passed through Syntax, let them return and review the whole *thoroughly*. On taking up the selection from the "Historica Sacra," they should begin with the Grammar, in which they should be required to recite daily until prepared for College, or until they are familiar with its details.

LATIN LESSONS.

PART I.

LESSON I.

LATIN GRAMMAR is the art of speaking or writing the Latin language with propriety.

The Latin alphabet consists of twenty-five letters, having the same form and name as in English, without the *w*.

TABLE OF VOWEL AND DIPHTHONGAL SOUNDS.

Short <i>ă</i>	sounds like a	in Jehovah	as <i>ămăt</i> .
Long <i>ā</i>	like a	in father,	as <i>fāma</i> .
Short <i>é</i>	like e	in met,	as <i>pētēre</i> .
Long <i>ē</i>	like ey	in they,	as <i>docēre</i> .
Short <i>ī</i>	like i	in uniform,	as <i>unītas</i> .
Long <i>ī</i>	like i	in machine,	as <i>pīnus</i> .
Short <i>ō</i>	like o	in polite,	as <i>indōles</i> .
Long <i>ō</i>	like o	in go,	as <i>pōno</i> .
Short <i>ū</i>	like u	in popular,	as <i>popūlus</i> .
Long <i>ū</i>	like u	in full, or pure,	as <i>tūba, ūsus</i> .
ae or æ	} like ey	in they,	as { <i>Pæan</i> .
oe or œ			as { <i>Phœbus</i>
au	like ou	in our,	as <i>aurum</i> .

* A long vowel is marked ¯, a short vowel ˘; as, *cārinā*. For the vowel sounds according to the English mode of pronunciation, see Bullions' Grammar pp. IX—XII.

REM. The vowels *a* and *e* have the same sounds in all situations. The sound of *i*, *o*, and *u* is slightly modified when followed by a consonant in the same syllable, and is the same whether long or short. Thus modified,

i	sounds like i	in sit,	as mīttit.
o	like o	in not,	as pōtērat, forma.
u	like u	in tub,	as frūctūs.

CONSONANTS.

The consonants, generally, are pronounced as in English.

It is important to remember that *c* and *g* are hard before *a*, *o*, and *u*, and soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*.

RULES OF QUANTITY.

1. A vowel before another vowel is short.
2. Diphthongs are long.
3. A vowel before two consonants, or before the double consonants, *x*, *z*, and *j*, is long, by *position*.

Exc. A vowel before a mute and liquid is *common*, i. e. either long or short.

Obs. 1. In Latin words there are as many syllables as there are separate vowels and diphthongs.

Obs. 2. The *Penult* of a word is the last syllable but *one*: the *antepenult* is the last syllable but *two*.

(**NOTE.** A vowel in the penult, not coming under the above rules, will be marked *˘*, or *˙*.)

RULES OF ACCENT.

NOTE. A dissyllable is a word of two syllables; a polysyllable is a word of three or more syllables.

1. In dissyllables the *penult* is always accented.
2. In polysyllables, if the penult is long, it is accented; if short, the antepenult is accented.

LESSON II.

[Review Lesson I.]

PARTS OF SPEECH.

THE parts of speech in Latin are eight ; *Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb*, declined ; *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection*, and *Conjunction*, undeclined.

NOUNS.

A NOUN is the *name* of any *person, place, or thing* ; as, *Charles, Boston, Virtue*.

To the Latin noun belong *Gender, Number, and Case*.

There are three Genders ; *Masculine, Feminine*, and *Neuter* ; Nouns sometimes *Masculine*, and sometimes *Feminine*, are *Common* gender.

There are two Numbers, — the *Singular*, denoting one ; as, *boy* ; and the *Plural*, denoting more than one ; as, *boys*.

There are six Cases : the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

DECLENSION.

In Latin there are five declensions ; called the *First, Second, Third, Fourth, and Fifth*, distinguished by the termination of the *Genitive Singular*.

The first declension has the genitive singular in *æ*.

The second	"	"	"	in i.
------------	---	---	---	-------

The third	"	"	"	in is.
-----------	---	---	---	--------

The fourth	"	"	"	in us.
------------	---	---	---	--------

The fifth	"	"	"	in ei.
-----------	---	---	---	--------

LESSON III.

[Review Lessons I. and II.]

GENERAL RULES FOR THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* alike in both numbers; and in the plural these cases end always in *a*.
2. The *Vocative*, for the most part in the singular, and *always* in the plural, is like the *Nominative*.
3. The *Dative* and *Ablative* plural end always alike.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

The first declension has four terminations in the *Nominative*; two feminine, *a*, and *e*; two masculine, *as*, and *es*.*

TERMINATIONS.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. — a,		Nom. — æ,
Gen. — æ,		Gen. — ārum,
Dat. — æ,		Dat. — is,
Acc. — am,		Acc. — as,
Voc. — a,		Voc. — æ,
Abl. — ā.		Abl. — is.

* Nouns in *e*, *as*, and *es*, being less common, are omitted here. See Gr. p. 14.

Penna, *a pen* ; Fem.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. penn-a,	<i>a pen.</i>	N. penn-æ,	<i>pens.</i>
G. penn-æ,	<i>of a pen.</i>	G. penn-ārum,	<i>of pens.</i>
D. penn-æ,	<i>to or for a pen.</i>	D. penn-is,	<i>to or for pens.</i>
Ac. penn-am,	<i>a pen.</i>	Ac. penn-as,	<i>pens.</i>
V. penn-a,	<i>O pen.</i>	V. penn-æ,	<i>O pens.</i>
Ab. penn-ā,	<i>in, with, from,</i> <i>or by a pen.</i>	Ab. penn-is,	<i>in, with, from,</i> <i>or by pens.</i>

Some nouns have *abus*, instead of *is*, in the Dative and Ablative plural, to distinguish them from nouns in the second declension ; namely, *Dea, a goddess* ; *Equa, a mare* ; *Filia, a daughter* ; *Mula, a she mule* ; and *Famūla, a female slave*.

Dea, a goddess ; Fem.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. de-a,	<i>a goddess.</i>	N. de-æ,	<i>goddesses.</i>
G. de-æ,	<i>of a goddess.</i>	G. de-ārum,	<i>of goddesses.</i>
D. de-æ,	<i>to a goddess.</i>	D. de-ābus,	<i>to goddesses.</i>
Ac. de-am,	<i>a goddess.</i>	Ac. de-as,	<i>goddesses.</i>
V. de-a,	<i>O goddess.</i>	V. de-æ,	<i>O goddesses.</i>
Ab. de-ā,	<i>in, etc., a goddess.</i>	Ab. de-ābus,	<i>in goddesses.</i>

EXERCISE ON THE FIRST DECLENSION.

1. *Write* the termination of the cases in both numbers.
2. *Give the Latin for* — Of pens — With pens — O pen — To or for a pen — A pen, *in accusative* — Of a goddess — O goddesses — To or for goddesses — Goddesses, *in accusative* — With or by a goddess — Of goddesses.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

(NOTE. Let the pupil look for the words in this and all the succeeding lessons, in the Vocabulary at the back part of the book. In lessons like this, where the words have no agreement or government, let him tell what part of speech they are—of what declension, gender, number, and case.)

Ripas — Insulæ — Famam — Pugnæ — Injuriarum —
Memoriam — Pœnas — Superbiæ — Terrarum — Oris —
Sylvarum — Umbram — Pennam — Deabus — Penna —
Dæ — Pennas — Filiabus — Pennarum.

QUESTIONS. What *English* word is derived from *memoria*?—
from *fama*?—from *injuria*?—from *pœna*?—from *penna*?

LESSON IV.

(Review Lessons I, II, and III carefully.)

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The second declension has seven terminations in the Nominative: five masculine,—*er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, and *os*; two neuter,—*um* and *on*.*

TERMINATIONS.

Masculine.		Neuter.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. — <i>er</i> , <i>us</i> ,	N. — <i>i</i> ,	N. — <i>um</i> ,	N. — <i>a</i> ,
G. — <i>i</i> ,	G. — <i>orum</i> ,	G. — <i>i</i> ,	G. — <i>orum</i> ,
D. — <i>o</i> ,	D. — <i>is</i> ,	D. — <i>o</i> ,	D. — <i>is</i> ,
Ac. — <i>um</i> ,	Ac. — <i>os</i> ,	Ac. — <i>um</i> ,	Ac. — <i>a</i> ,
V. — <i>e</i> , or like } Nom. }	V. — <i>i</i> ,	V. — <i>um</i> ,	V. — <i>a</i> ,
Ab. — <i>o</i> ,	Ab. — <i>is</i> ,	Ab. — <i>o</i> ,	Ab. — <i>is</i> .

* Nouns in *os* and *on*, being less common, are omitted here.—
See Gr. p. 18.

Puer, a boy; Masc.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. puer,	a boy.	N. puēr-i,	boys.
G. puēr-i,	of a boy.	G. puer-ōrum,	of boys.
D. puēr-o,	to a boy.	D. puēr-is,	to boys.
Ac. puēr-um,	a boy,	Ac. puēr-os,	boys.
V. puer,	O boy,	V. puēr-i,	O boys.
Ab. puēr-o,	in, etc., a boy.	Ab. puēr-is,	in, etc., boys.

NOTE. Most nouns in *er*, lose *e*, in the oblique cases; as *ager*, *agri*, *agro*, *agrum*, etc.

Domīnus, a lord; Masc.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. domīn-us,	a lord.	N. domīn-i,	lords.
G. domīn-i,	of a lord.	G. domīn-ōrum,	of lords.
D. domīn-o,	to a lord.	D. domīn-is,	to lords.
Ac. domīn-um,	a lord.	Ac. domīn-os,	lords.
V. domīn-e,*	O lord.	V. domīn-i,	O lords.
Ab. domīn-o,	in, etc., a lord.	Ab. domīn-is,	in, etc., lords.

* REM. Proper names in *ius*, lose *us* in the *Vocative*. *Deus* has *deus*; *filius* has *fili*; *meus* has *meus* and *mī*.

Regnum, a kingdom; Neut.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. regn-um,	a kingdom.	N. regn-a,	kingdoms.
G. regn-i,	of a kingdom.	G. regn-ōrum,	of kingdoms.
D. regn-o,	to a kingdom.	D. regn-is,	to kingdoms.
Ac. regn-um,	a kingdom,	Ac. regn-a,	kingdoms.
V. regn-um,	O kingdom.	V. regn-a,	O kingdoms.
Ab. regn-o,	in a kingdom.	Ab. regn-is,	in kingdoms.

EXERCISE ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

1 Write the terminations of the cases in both genders, and for both numbers.

2 Give the Latin for — Of boys — With the boys — O boy! — To or for boys — Of a boy — Boys, in accusa-

tive — With a boy — O boys! — Of kingdoms — In the kingdom — To, or for the kingdoms — Of the kingdom — O kingdoms! — To the lord — Of the lord — From the lords — For the lords — O lord! — Lords, *in accusative* — Of the lords.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Puerorum — Turba — Morbōrum — Causas — Copia — Pabūli — Regnum — Persarum — Numērus — Armōrum — Collum Camēli — Mulābus — Domīnos — Regna — Domīni — Regnis — Historia — Anīmus — Viris — Umbras — Deo.

QUESTIONS. What *English* words are derived from *puer*? — from *dominus*? — from *regnum*? — from *causa*? — from *copia*? — from *numērus*? — from *annus*? from *morbis*?

LESSON V.

[Review LESSONS III and IV.]

EXERCISE ON THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Rules of Syntax.

RULE I. One substantive governs another in the genitive, where the latter substantive limits the signification of the former.

RULE II. A verb agrees with its nominative, in number and person.

RULE III. Any verb may have the same case after it as before it, when both words refer to the same thing.

NOTE. The third person *singular* and *plural* of the verb *sum* — viz: *est, sunt* — will be used in the exercises which follow. In parsing them, it is only necessary, *for the present*, to say, *est* is a verb, third person singular, and agrees with its nominative. *Sunt* is a verb, third person plural, and agrees with its nominative.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Italia est peninsŭla.

Ara dei.

Vita est umbra.

Domīnus terræ.

Nymphæ sunt femīnæ.

Viri sunt.

Historia est vita memoriæ.

Deus est animus mundi.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Italy is a peninsula — The altar of God — Life is a shadow — Men are — Nymphs are females — The Lord of the earth — God is the soul of the world — History is the life of memory.

QUESTIONS. What *English* words are derived from *Italia*? *peninsŭla*? — from *vita*? — from *terra*? — from *nasa*? — from *mundus*?

LESSON VI.

(Review Lessons IV. and V.)

THE ADJECTIVE.

An ADJECTIVE is a word added to a noun to express its quality, or to limit its signification; as, *Vir bonus*, a good man; *decem naves*, ten ships.

To the Adjective belong *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case*.

The terminations of adjectives of *three* endings correspond to the nouns of the *first* and *second* declensions.

Those having *one* or *two* endings correspond to nouns of the *third* declension.

Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined as follows :

Bonus, bona, bonum; *good*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. bon-us,	a,	um.	N. bon-i	æ,	a.
G. bon-i,	æ,	i.	G. bon-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
D. bon-o,	æ,	o.	D. bon-is	is,	is.
Ac. bon-um,	am,	um.	A. bon-os	as,	a.
V. bon-e,	a,	um.	V. bon-i	æ,	a.
Ab. bon-o,	ā,	o.	Ab. bon-is,	is,	is.

Tener, tenēra, tenērum; *tender*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. tener,	a,	um.	N. tenēr-i	æ,	a.
G. tenēr-i	æ,	i.	G. tener-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
D. tenēr-o	æ,	o.	D. tenēr-is,	is,	is.
Ac. tenēr-um,	am,	um.	Ac. tenēr-os,	as,	a.
V. tener,	a,	um.	V. tenēr-i.	æ,	a,
Ab. tenēr-o,	ā,	o.	Ab. tenēr-is,	is,	is,

REM. But most adjectives in *er*, lose *e* from the oblique cases, as *ater*, *atra*, *atrum*; G. *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*, &c.

The following have the *genitive singular* in *-ius*, and the *dative* in *-i*; viz : *alius*, *alter*, *neuter*, *nullus*, *solus*, *totus*, *ullus*, *unus*, *uter*, *uterque*.

NOTE. *Alius* has the neuter *aliud*. The genitive *alius*, contracted for *aliius*, has the penult long : Other genitives in *-ius* have the penult long or short

EXAMPLE.

Totus, tota, totum ; *whole*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. totus,	a,	um.	N. tot-i,	æ,	a.
G. tot-ius,	ius,	ius.	G. tot-ōrum,	arum,	ōrum.
D. tot-i,	i,	i.	D. tot-is,	is,	is.
Ac. tot-um,	am,	um.	Ac. tot-os,	as,	a.
V. tot-e,	a,	um.	V. tot-i,	æ,	a,
Ab. tot-o,	â,	o.	Ab. tot-is,	is,	is.

EXERCISE.

RULE. IV. An adjective agrees with its noun in *gender, number, and case*; as, bonus puer, a *good boy*.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Penna est bona.	Magnam aulam.
Domīnus est bonus.	Tutum locum.
Antrum est vastum.	Speluncis atris.

Magistri scholæ sunt multi. Ardua saxa.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

The boy is good — The place is safe — The rock is high—A great hall, *in accusative*—In the dark caves.

QUESTIONS. What *English* words are derived from *vastus*?—from *magnus*?—from *magister*?—from *schola*?—from *arduus*?

NOTE. Write the terminations of adjectives of the first and second Declensions.

LESSON VII.

(Review Lesson VI.)

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns of the third declension are very numerous; they are of all genders, and have their genitive in *is*.

Sermo, *a speech*, Masc.*Singular.*

N. sermo,	<i>a speech.</i>
G. sermōn-is	<i>of a speech.</i>
D. sermōn-i,	<i>to a speech.</i>
Ac. sermōn-em,	<i>a speech.</i>
V. sermo,	<i>O speech.</i>
Ab. sermōn-e,	<i>in a speech.</i>

Plural.

N. sermōn-es,	<i>speeches.</i>
G. sermōn-um,	<i>of speeches.</i>
D. sermon-ibus,	<i>to speeches.</i>
Ac. sermōn-es,	<i>speeches.</i>
V. sermōn-es,	<i>O speeches.</i>
Ab. sermon-ibus,	<i>in speeches.</i>

Color, *a color*, Masc.*Singular.*

N. color,	<i>a color.</i>
G. colōr-is,	<i>of a color.</i>
D. colōr-i,	<i>to or for a color.</i>
Ac. colōr-em,	<i>a color.</i>
V. color,	<i>O color.</i>
Ab. colōr-e	<i>in, etc., a color.</i>

Plural.

N. colōr-es,	<i>colors,</i>
G. colōr-um,	<i>of colors.</i>
D. color-ibus,	<i>to or for colors.</i>
Ac. colōr-es,	<i>colors.</i>
V. colōr-es,	<i>O colors.</i>
Ab. color-ibus,	<i>in, etc. colors.</i>

Miles, *a soldier*, Masc.*Singular.*

N. miles,	<i>a soldier.</i>
G. milīt-is,	<i>of a soldier.</i>
D. milīt-i,	<i>to a soldier.</i>
A. milīt-em,	<i>a soldier.</i>
V. miles,	<i>O soldier.</i>
Ab. milīt-e,	<i>in etc., a soldier.</i>

Plural.

N. milīt-es,	<i>soldiers.</i>
G. milīt-um,	<i>of soldiers.</i>
D. milit-ibus,	<i>to soldiers.</i>
Ac. milīt-es,	<i>soldiers.</i>
V. milīt-es,	<i>O soldiers.</i>
Ab. milit-ibus,	<i>in soldiers.</i>

EXERCISE.

RULE V. *Prepositions govern the accusative and ablative.*

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Sermo est cibus animi.

Arundo est rapidum telum.

Nemo est sine culpā.

Pomi color.

Ex arboribus.

Ab rege.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Conversation is the food of the soul — Arrows are swift darts — The color of the apple — From the king — No one is without fault.

QUESTIONS. What *English* words are derived from *culpa*? — from *sermo*? — from *arbor*? — from *color*? — from *rapidus*?

LESSON VIII.

(Review Lesson VII.)

Rupes, *a rock*, Fem.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. rupes,	<i>a rock.</i>	N. rup-es,	<i>rocks</i>
G. rup-is.	<i>of a rock.</i>	G. rup-ium,	<i>of rocks.</i>
D. rup-i,	<i>to or for a rock.</i>	D. rup-ibus, to or for	<i>rocks.</i>
Ac. rup-em,	<i>a rock.</i>	Ac. rup-es,	<i>rocks.</i>
V. rupes,	<i>O rock.</i>	V. rup-es,	<i>O rocks.</i>
Ab. rupe,	<i>in, etc., a rock.</i>	Ab. rup-ibus, in, etc.,	<i>rocks.</i>

Pars, *a part*, Fem.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. pars,	<i>a part.</i>	N. part-es,	<i>parts.</i>
G. part-is,	<i>of a part.</i>	G. part-ium,	<i>of parts.</i>
D. part-i,	<i>to or for a part.</i>	D. part-ibus, to or for	<i>parts.</i>
Ac. part-em,	<i>a part.</i>	Ac. part-es,	<i>parts.</i>
V. pars,	<i>O part.</i>	V. part-es,	<i>O parts.</i>
Ab. part-e,	<i>in, etc., a part.</i>	Ab. part-ibus, in, etc.,	<i>parts.</i>

Veritas, *truth*, Fem.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. veritas,	<i>truth.</i>	N. veritāt-es,	<i>truths.</i>
G. veritāt-is,	<i>of truth.</i>	G. veritāt-um,	<i>of truths.</i>
D. veritāt-i,	<i>to truth.</i>	D. veritāt-ibus,	<i>to truths.</i>
Ac. veritāt-em,	<i>truth.</i>	Ac. veritāt-es,	<i>truths.</i>
V. veritas,	<i>O truth.</i>	V. veritāt-es,	<i>O truths.</i>
Ab. veritāt-e,	<i>in, etc. truth.</i>	Ab. veritāt-ibus,	<i>in truths.</i>

Parents, *a parent*, Common Gender.

Singular.

Plural.

N. parens,	<i>a parent.</i>	N. parent-es,	<i>parents.</i>
G. parent-is,	<i>of a parent.</i>	G. parent-um,	<i>of parents.</i>
D. parent-i,	<i>to a parent.</i>	D. parent-ibus,	<i>to parents.</i>
Ac. parent-em,	<i>a parent.</i>	Ac. parent-es,	<i>parents.</i>
V. parens,	<i>O parent.</i>	V. parent-es,	<i>O parents.</i>
Ab. parent-e,	<i>in a parent.</i>	Ab. parent-ibus,	<i>in parents.</i>

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Clades hostiū est immensa.	Firmitas materiæ.
Ars est imitatio naturæ.	Pars castrōrum.
Piētas erga parentes.	Magna rupes.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

A part of the camp—There is an immense destruction of the enemy—The firmness of the material—Piety towards parents—A great rock—The imitation of nature.

QUESTIONS. What *English* words are derived from *ars*?—from *imitatio*?—from *piētas*?—from *firmitas*?—from *parens*?

LESSON IX.

(Review Lesson VIII.)

Iter, *a journey*, Neuter.

Singular.

Plural.

N. iter,	<i>a journey.</i>	N. itinēr-a,	<i>journeys</i>
G. itinēr-is,	<i>of a journey.</i>	G. itinēr-um,	<i>of journeys.</i>
D. itinēr-i,	<i>to a journey.</i>	D. itiner-ibus,	<i>to journeys.</i>
Ac. iter,	<i>a journey.</i>	Ac. itinēr-a,	<i>journeys</i>
V. iter,	<i>O journey.</i>	V. itinēr-a,	<i>O journeys</i>
Ab. itinēr-e,	<i>in a journey.</i>	Ab. itiner-ibus,	<i>in journeys</i>

Flumen, *a river*, Neuter.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. flumen,	<i>a river.</i>	N. flumīn-a,	<i>rivers.</i>
G. flumīn-is,	<i>of a river.</i>	G. flumīn-um,	<i>of rivers.</i>
D. flumīn-i,	<i>to a river.</i>	D. flumīn-ibus,	<i>to rivers.</i>
Ac. flumen,	<i>a river.</i>	Ac. flumīn-a,	<i>rivers.</i>
V. flumen,	<i>O river.</i>	V. flumīn-a,	<i>O rivers.</i>
Ab. flumīn-e, in, etc.	<i>a river.</i>	Ab. flumīn-ibus,	<i>in rivers.</i>

Opus, *a work*, Neuter.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Opus,	<i>a work.</i>	N. Opĕr-a,	<i>works.</i>
G. Opĕr-is,	<i>of a work.</i>	G. Opĕr-um,	<i>of works.</i>
D. Opĕr-i,	<i>to a work.</i>	D. Oper-ibus,	<i>to works.</i>
Ac. Opus,	<i>a work.</i>	Ac. Opĕr-a,	<i>works.</i>
V. Opus,	<i>O work.</i>	V. Opĕr-a,	<i>O works.</i>
Ab. Opĕr-e, in, etc.,	<i>a work.</i>	Ab. Oper-ibus, in, etc.,	<i>works.</i>

Sedile, *a seat*, Neuter.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. sedīle,	<i>a seat.</i>	N. sedil-ia,	<i>seats.</i>
G. sedīl-is,	<i>of a seat.</i>	G. sedil-ium,	<i>of seats.</i>
D. sedīl-i,	<i>to a seat.</i>	D. sedil-ibus,	<i>to seats.</i>
Ac. sedīl-e,	<i>a seat.</i>	Ac. sedil-ia,	<i>seats.</i>
V. sedīl-e,	<i>O seat.</i>	V. sedil-ia,	<i>O seats.</i>
Ab. sedīl-i, in, etc.,	<i>a seat.</i>	Ab. sedil-ibus, in, etc.,	<i>seats.</i>

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Iter homīnum est trans flumen.	Ante tempus.
In mari sunt naves.	Capitum numărus.
Opĕra Dei sunt miranda.	In flumīne.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

The number of heads — The ships are on the sea — In the river — The route of the men is over the river — Before the time — The works of God are wonderful.

QUESTIONS. What *English* words are derived from *iter*?—from *navis*?—from *opus*?—from *caput*?

LESSON X.

(Review nouns in Lessons VIII. and IX.)

IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Vis, force, power, Fem.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. vis,	<i>force.</i>	N. vir-es,	<i>forces.</i>
G. vis,	<i>of force.</i>	G. vir-ium,	<i>of forces.</i>
D. (wanting.)		D. vir-ibus,	<i>to forces.</i>
Ac. vim,	<i>force.</i>	Ac. vir-es,	<i>forces.</i>
V. vis,	<i>O force.</i>	V. vir-es,	<i>O forces.</i>
Ab. vi,	<i>in, etc. force.</i>	Ab. vir-ibus	<i>in, etc. forces.</i>

Bos, an ox or cow, Com. Gender.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. bos,	<i>a cow.</i>	N. bōv-es,	<i>cows.</i>
G. bōv-is,	<i>of a cow.</i>	G. bo-um,	<i>of cows.</i>
D. bōv-i,	<i>to a cow.</i>	D. bōbus or būbus,	<i>to cows.</i>
Ac. bōv-em,	<i>a cow.</i>	Ac. bōv-es,	<i>cows.</i>
V. bos,	<i>O cow.</i>	V. bōv-es,	<i>O cows.</i>
Ab. bōv-e,	<i>in, etc., a cow.</i>	Ab. bōbus or būbus,	<i>in cows.</i>

Jupīter.

Materfamilias, a mistress of a family, Fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
N. Jupīter,	N. materfamilias,
G. Jov-is,	G. matr-isfamilias,
D. Jov-i,	D. matr-ifamilias,
Ac. Jov-em,	Ac. matr-emfamilias,
V. Jupīter,	V. materfamilias,
Ab. Jov-e.	Ab. matr-efamilias.

DOUBLE NOUN — Jusjurandum,* *an oath*, Neut.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. jusjurandum,		N. jurajuranda,	
G. jurisjurandi,		G. _____	
D. jurijurando,		D. _____	
Ac. jusjurandum.		Ac. jurajuranda,	
V. jusjurandum;		V. jurajuranda,	
Ab. jurejurando.		Ab. _____	

LESSON XI.

(Review Lesson X.)

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the *fourth declension* have two terminations: -*us*, usually masculine; and -*u*, neuter, indeclinable in the singular.

Fructus, *fruit*, Masc.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. fruct-us,	<i>fruit.</i>	N. fruct-us,	<i>fruits.</i>
G. fruct-ûs,	<i>of fruit.</i>	G. fruct-uum,	<i>of fruits.</i>
D. fruct-ui,	<i>to fruit.</i>	D. fruct-ibus,	<i>to fruits.</i>
Ac. fruct-um,	<i>fruit.</i>	Ac. fruct-us,	<i>fruits.</i>
V. fruct-us,	<i>O fruit.</i>	V. fruct-us,	<i>O fruits.</i>
Ab. fruct-u,	<i>in, etc. fruit.</i>	Ab. fruct-ibus,	<i>in, etc. fruits.</i>

Cornu, *a horn*, Neut.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. cornu,	<i>a horn.</i>	N. corn-ua,	<i>horns.</i>
G. cornu,	<i>of a horn.</i>	G. corn-uum,	<i>of horns.</i>
D. cornu,	<i>to a horn.</i>	D. corn-ibus,	<i>to horns.</i>
Ac. cornu,	<i>a horn.</i>	Ac. corn-ua,	<i>horns.</i>
V. cornu,	<i>O horn.</i>	V. corn-ua,	<i>O horns.</i>
Ab. cornu,	<i>in, etc. horn.</i>	Ab. corn-ibus,	<i>in, etc. horns.</i>

* Declined like *jus* of the third and *jurandum* of the second declension.

Domus, a house, Fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. dom-us,	N. dom-us,
G. dom-ūs, or -i,	G. dom-uum, or -ōrum,
D. dom-ui, or -o,	D. dom-ibus,
Ac. dom-um,	Ac. dom-us, or -os,
V. dom-us,	V. dom-us,
Ab. dom-o,	Ab. dom-ibus.

REM. *Domus* is partly of the *fourth*, and partly of the *second* declension. ;

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

In exitu iter vitæ est incertum.	Cum exercitu.
Fructus labōris est gratus.	Scalārum gradus.
Domus est ampla et pulchra.	Cornua cervi.
Ex conspectu Cæsāris.	Adventu navium.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

The horns of a stag — The fruit of labor is pleasing —
By the coming of the ships — The house is spacious and
beautiful — The steps of the ladders — The journey of
life, in its issue, is uncertain — With the army.

QUESTIONS. What *English* words are derived from *fructus*? —
from *adventus*? — from *gratus*? — from *gradus*?

LESSON XII.

(Review Lesson XI.)

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the *fifth declension* have but *one* termination, *-es*, and are of the feminine gender.

Dies, *a day*, Masc.*Singular.*

N. dies,	<i>a day.</i>
G. di-ēi,	<i>of a day.</i>
D. di-ēi,	<i>to a day.</i>
Ac. di-em,	<i>a day.</i>
V. di-es,	<i>O day.</i>
Ab. di-e,	<i>in, etc. day.</i>

Plural.

N. di-es,	<i>days.</i>
G. di-ērum,	<i>of days.</i>
D. di-ēbus,	<i>to days.</i>
Ac. di-es,	<i>days.</i>
V. di-es,	<i>O days.</i>
&b. di-ēbus,	<i>in, etc. days.</i>

REM. *Dies* is masculine and feminine in the *singular*, and masculine in the *plural*. — *Meridies* is masculine in the *singular*, and wants the plural.

DOUBLE NOUN. *Respublica*,* *a commonwealth*, Fem.*Singular.*

N. <i>respublica</i> .
G. <i>reipublicæ</i> .
D. <i>reipublicæ</i> .
Ac. <i>rempublicam</i> .
V. <i>respublica</i> .
Ab. <i>republicâ</i> .

Plural.

N. <i>respublicæ</i> .
G. <i>rerumpublicarum</i> .
D. <i>rebuspublicis</i> .
Ac. <i>respublicas</i> .
V. <i>respublicæ</i> .
Ab. <i>rebuspublicis</i> .

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Fides sine operibus est vana.	Spes salutis.
Spes in rebus est robur animi.	Series rerum.
Nunc sunt dies magnarum rerum.	Speciem amicitiae.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

An appearance of friendship — Now are the days of great things — The hope of safety — Faith without works is vain — A series of affairs — Hope in affairs is the strength of the soul.

* Declined like *res*, of the fifth declension, and *publica*, of the first.

QUESTIONS. From what Latin word is *day* derived?—*republic*?—*series*?—*faith*?

LESSON XIII.

Write tables of the terminations for *all* the declensions, and for *adjectives* of the first and second declensions.

LESSON XIV.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

EXAMPLES OF ONE TERMINATION.

Felix, *happy*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. fel-ix,	ix,	ix.	N. fel-ices,	ices,	icia.
G. fel-icis,	icis,	icis.	G. fel-icium,	icium,	icium.
D. fel-ici,	ici,	ici.	D. fel-icibus,	icibus,	icibus.
Ac. fel-icem,	icem,	ix.	Ac. fel-ices,	ices,	icia.
V. fel-ix,	ix,	ix.	V. fel-ices,	ices,	icia.
Ab. fel-ice,	or ici,	&c.	Ab. fel-icibus,	icibus,	icibus.

Prudens, *prudent*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem. Neut.
N. prud-ens,	ens,	ens.	N. prudent-es,	es, ia.
G. prudent-is,	is,	is.	G. prudent-ium,	ium, ium.
D. prudent-i,	i,	i.	D. prudent-ibus,	ibus, ibus.
Ac. prudent-em,	em,	ens,	Ac. prudent-es,	es, ia.
V. prud-ens,	ens,	ens.	V. prudent-es,	es, ia.
Ab. prudent-e,	or-i,	etc.	Ab. prudent-ibus,	ibus, ibus.

EXERCISE.

RULE VI. A noun added to another to express a property or quality belonging to it, is put in the genitive or ablative.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Sapientes puëri sunt felices. Furentibus Austris.
 Felix est homo morum rectorum. Præsentem mortem.
 Prudentes feminae sunt modestæ. Audax homo.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

A bold man — Prudent females are modest — In the raging South winds — Instant death, *in accusative* — The man of upright habits is happy — Wise boys are happy.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* words are the following derived?
 — *Sapient*? — *audacious*? — *present*? — *modest*? — *prudent*?

LESSON XV.

(Review Lesson XIV.)

EXAMPLE OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

Mitis, *meek*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. mit-is,	is,	e.	N. mit-es,	es,	ia.
G. mit-is,	is,	is.	G. mit-ium,	ium,	ium.
D. mit-i,	i,	i.	D. mit-ibus,	ibus,	ibus.
Ac. mit-em,	em,	e.	Ac. mit-es,	es,	ia.
V. mit-is,	is,	e.	V. mit-es,	es,	ia.
Ab. mit-i,	i,	i.	Ab. mit-ibus,	ibus,	ibus.

EXAMPLE OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

Acer, or acris, *sharp*.

	-Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	{ acer, <i>or</i> acris,			N.	acr-es,	es,	ia.
G.		acris,	acre.	G.	acr-ium.	ium,	ium.
D.	acr-is,	is,	is.	D.	acr-ibus,	ibus,	ibus.
Ac.	acr-i,	i,	i.	Ac.	acr-es,	es,	ia.
V.	acr-em,	em,	e.	V.	acr-es,	es,	ia.
Ab.	acer, etc.	is,	e.	Ab.	acr-es,	es,	ia.
	acr-i,	i,	i.		acr-ibus,	ibus,	ibus.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Mitis puer est gratus comes.

Veritas est immortalis.

Nobilis vidua. Rem omnem.

Pugnæ militum sunt acres.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

The whole affair, *in accusative* — The battles of the soldiers are fierce — A noble widow — Truth is immortal — A mild boy is a pleasing companion.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* words are the following derived ?
Verity ?—noble ?—immortal ?—widow ?—acid ?

LESSON XVI.

(Review Lesson XV.)

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Numeral adjectives are such as signify *number*. In Latin they are divided into *four classes*.

Cardinal, which express number simply ; as, *one, two, three*, etc.

Ordinal, denoting which of the number, as : *first*, *second*, *third*, etc.

Distributive and Multiplicative.

Of the *Cardinal*, the *first three*, and *mille*, are *declinable*, the rest are *indeclinable*.

* Duo, two.

Tres, three.

Plural.

Plural.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. duo,	duæ,	duo.	N. tres,	tres,	tria.
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum.	G. trium,	trium,	trium.
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	D. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.
Ac. duos, -o,	duas,	duo.	Ac. tres,	tres,	tria.
V. duo,	duæ,	duo.	V. tres,	tres,	tria.
Ab. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	Ab. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

* Unus, one, has been given under *bonus*; ambo, both, declined like duo.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Una domus est in luco	Unius viri prudentia.
Sunt duo magistri in schola.	Inter duas acies.
In campo sunt tres equites.	Tres cervos.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

The wisdom of one man — There is one house in the grove — Between two armies, *in the accusative* — Three horsemen are in the plain — Three stags, *in accusative* — Two masters are in the school.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* are the following *English* words derived? — *one*? — *two*? — *three*? — *prudence*?

The *Ordinal* numbers, formed from the *Cardinal*, all end in *-us*, and are declined like *bonus*, as : *primus, secundus, tertius, quartus, quintus*, etc.

LESSON XVII.

(Review Lesson XVI.)

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have *three degrees* of *comparison* ; the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative* ; as : *latus, broad* ; *latior, broader* ; *latissimus, broadest*.

The *Comparative* is formed from *any* case of the *Positive* ending in *-i*, by adding *-or*, for the *Masc.* and *Fem.* ; and *-us*, for the *Neuter*.

The *Superlative* is formed from *any* case of the *Positive* ending in *-i*, by changing *-i* into *-issimus* ;

EXAMPLES.

<i>Positive.</i>			<i>Comparative.</i>		<i>Superlative.</i>
			M. F.	N.	
N. dur-us,	-a,	-um.			
G. dur-i,	-æ,	-i,	dur-ior,	dur-ius,	dur-issimus.
N. mit-is,	-is,	-e.			
G. mit-is,	-is,	-is.			
D. mit-i,	-i,	-i.	miti-or,	miti-us,	mit-issimus.

In like manner compare, *latus, broad* ; *carus, dear* ; *brevis, short* ; *dulcis, sweet* ; *grandis, great*.

But if the *Positive* end in *-er*, the *Superlative* is formed by adding *-rimus* to the *Nom. Sing. Masc.* as : *tener, -a, -um* ; *Superlative, tener-rimus*.

All *Comparatives* are thus declined :

Mitior, Mitius, *milder*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	miti-or,	miti-or,	miti-us.
G.	miti-ōris,	miti-ōris,	miti-ōris.
D.	miti-ōri,	miti-ōri,	miti-ōri.
Ac.	miti-ōrem,	miti-ōrem,	miti-us.
V.	miti-or,	miti-or,	miti-us.
Ab.	miti-ōre, or -ōri, etc.		

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	miti-ōres,	miti-ōres,	miti-ōra.
G.	miti-ōrum,	miti-ōrum,	miti-ōrum.
D.	miti-orībus,	miti-orībus,	miti-orībus,
Ac.	miti-ōres,	miti-ōres,	miti-ōra.
V.	miti-ōres,	miti-ōres,	miti-ōra.
Ab.	miti-orībus,	miti-orībus,	miti-orībus.

All *Superlatives* are declined like *bonus*, as : *primus*, *prima*, *primum*; *durissimus*, -a, -um.

ADDITIONAL RULES.

RULE VII. The comparative degree governs the Ablative, when *quàm*, "than," is omitted.

RULE VIII. *Partitives*, and words placed *partitively*, *Comparatives*, *Superlatives*, *Interrogatives*, and some *Numerals*, govern the *genitive plural*.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Agnus est mitior leōne. Homīnem stultiōrem.

Eloquentia Cicerōnis est dulciōr melle.

Homērus poetārum est clarissīmus.

Frigidissīmus ventōrum est Aquīlo.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

A more foolish man, *in accusative*—Homer is the most renowned of the Poets—The eloquence of Cicero is sweeter than honey—Aquila is the coldest of the winds—A lamb is more mild than a lion.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* are the following *English* words derived?—*frigid*?—*eloquence*?—*poet*?—*lion*?—*dulcet*?

LESSON XVIII.

(Review Lesson XVII.)

Irregular and defective Comparison.

Positive. Comp. Superl.

Bonus,	melior,	optimus.	Good,	better,	best.
Magnus,	major,	maximus.	Great,	greater,	greatest.
Malus,	pejor,	pessimus.	Bad,	worse,	worst.
Multus,	plus, n.	plurimus.	Much,	more,	most.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	Little,	less,	least.

The following form the Superlative in -lĭmus :

Facĭlis, <i>easy</i> ,	facilior,	facillĭmus.
Imbecĭlis, <i>weak</i> ,	imbecilior,	imbecillĭmus.
Humĭlis, <i>low</i> ,	humilior,	humillĭmus.
Simĭlis, <i>similar</i> ,	similior,	simillĭmus.

The following have the Comparative regular, the Superlative irregular :

Exter, <i>outward</i> ,	exterior,	extrĕmus, or extĭmus.
Infĕrus, <i>low</i> ,	inferior,	infĭmus, or ĩmus.
Intĕrus, <i>inward</i> ,	interior,	intĭmus.
Matŭrus, <i>ripe</i> ,	maturior,	maturĭmus, or maturissĭmus.
Postĕrus, <i>behind</i> ,	posterior,	postrĕmus, or postŭmus.
Supĕrus, <i>high</i> ,	superior,	suprĕmus, or summus.

The following want the Positive.

Prior, <i>former</i> , <i>prīmus</i> .	Propior, <i>nearer</i> , <i>proxīmus</i> .
Ocior, <i>swifter</i> , <i>ocissīmus</i> .	Uterior, <i>farther</i> , <i>ultīmus</i> .

The following want the Comparative.

Novus,	<i>new</i> ,	novissīmus.
Nup̄rus,	<i>late</i> ,	nuperrīmus.
Incl̄ytus,	<i>renowned</i> ,	inclitissīmus.
Sacer,	<i>sacred</i> ,	sacerrīmus.

The following want the Superlative.

Adolescens,	<i>young</i> ,	adolescentior.
Diuturnus,	<i>lasting</i> ,	diuturnior.
Ingens,	<i>huge</i> ,	ingentior.
Juvēnis,	<i>young</i> ,	juvenior, junior.
Pronus,	<i>bending</i> ,	pronior.
Senex,	<i>old</i> ,	senior.
Opimus,	<i>rich</i> ,	opimior.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Nihil est melius amīco bono. Pejōre loco.
 Ad dignitātem via facillīma est. Imo pectōre.
 Ultīmus dies vitæ proxīmus est. Ex loco superiōre.
 Oratōrum primus Cicēro est.
 Mus est quadrupēdum minīmus.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

In a worse place — Cicero is the first of Orators — The path to dignity is most easy — From the higher place — The last day of life is very near — The mouse is the smallest of quadrupeds — In the bottom of the breast.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* are the following *English* words derived? — *prone*? — *juvenile*? — *imbecile*? — *humble*? — *similar*? — *mature*? — *interior*? — *inferior*? — *quadruped*? — *superior*?

LESSON XIX.

(Review Lesson XVIII.)

PRONOUNS.

A *Pronoun* is a word used *instead* of a *noun*.

There are *eighteen* simple pronouns, namely: *ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, and cujas.*

Ego, tu, and sui, are *personal*; all the rest are *adjective* pronouns.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Ego, I, First Person, Masc. or Fem.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. ego,	<i>I.</i>	N. nos,	<i>We.</i>
G. mei,	<i>of me.</i>	G. nostrum, or nostri,	<i>of us.</i>
D. mihi,	<i>to me.</i>	D. nobis,	<i>to or for us.</i>
Ac. me,	<i>me.</i>	Ac. nos,	<i>us.</i>
V. —	—	V. —	—
Ab. me,	<i>in, etc., me.</i>	Ab. nobis,	<i>in, etc., us.</i>

Tu, thou, Second Person, Masc. or Fem.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. tu,	<i>thou, or you.</i>	N. vos,	<i>ye, or you.</i>
G. tui,	<i>of thee, or of you.</i>	G. vestrum, or vestri,	<i>of you.</i>
D. tibi,	<i>to thee, or to you.</i>	D. vobis,	<i>to, or for you.</i>
Ac. te,	<i>thee, or you.</i>	Ac. vos,	<i>you.</i>
V. tu,	<i>O thou, or O you.</i>	V. vos,	<i>O ye, or O you.</i>
Ab. te,	<i>in, etc., thee, or you.</i>	Ab. vobis,	<i>in, etc., you.</i>

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself, Masc., Fem. and Neut.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. —	—	—	N. —	—	—
G. sui,	<i>of himself, etc.</i>		G. sui,	<i>of themselves.</i>	
D. sibi, <i>to, or for</i>	<i>himself, etc.</i>		D. sibi, <i>to, or for</i>	<i>themselves.</i>	
Ac. se,	<i>himself. etc.</i>		Ac. se,	<i>themselves.</i>	
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
Ab. se,	<i>in, with, etc.,</i> <i>himself, etc.</i>		Ab. se,	<i>in, with, etc.,</i> <i>themselves.</i>	

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Adjective pronouns are of several kinds, and are declined with *three* genders, to agree with their nouns, like adjectives.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Hic, hæc, hoc, this; Plural, these.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc.	N. hi,	hæ,	hæc.
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus.	G. horum,	harum,	horum.
D. huic,	huic,	huic.	D. his,	his,	his.
Ac. hunc,	hanc,	hoc.	Ac. hos,	has,	hæc.
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc.	V. hi,	hæ,	hæc.
Ab. hoc,	hac,	hoc.	Ab. his,	his,	his.

Ille, illa, illud, that; Plural, those.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ille,	illa,	illud.	N. illi,	illæ,	illa.
G. illius,	illius,	illius.	G. illorum,	illarum,	illorum.
D. illi,	illi,	illi.	D. illis,	illis,	illis.
Ac. illum,	illam,	illud.	Ac. illos,	illas,	illa.
V. ille,	illa,	illud.	V. illi,	illæ,	illa.
Ab. illo,	illâ,	illo.	Ab. illis,	illis,	illis.

REM. *Hic* means *this*, and refers to some person or thing present: *Ille* means *that*, and refers to a person or thing more distant. When two persons or things are spoken of in discourse, *hic* refers to the latter, and *ille* to the former. Without a substantive both are used as pronouns of the third person, and mean *he, she, it*.

Iste, ista, istud, *that*, is declined like *ille*.

Is, ea, id, *he, she, it, that*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is,	ea,	id.	N. ii,	eæ,	ea.
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus.	G. eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum
D. eī,	eī,	eī.	D. iis, or eīs, etc.		
Ac. eum,	eam,	id.	Ac. eos,	eas,	ea.
V. ———	———	———	V. ———	———	———
Ab. eo,	eā,	eo.	Ab. iis, or eīs, etc.		

Idem, eādem idem, *the same*.

Singular.

M.	F.	N.
N. idem,	eādem,	Idem.
G. ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem.
D. eidem,	eidem,	eidem
Ac. eundem,	eandem,	idem
V. idem,	eādem,	idem.
Ab. eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.

Plural.

M.	F.	N.
N. iīdem,	eādem,	eādem.
G. eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem.
D. eīsdem, or iisdem,	eīsdem, etc.,	eīsdem, etc.
Ac. eosdem,	easdem,	eādem.
V. iīdem,	eādem,	eādem.
Ab. eīsdem, or iisdem,	eīsdem, etc.,	eīsdem. etc.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

In me omnis culpa est.	Hæc lux.
Illi omnes nocentes sunt.	Hanc noctem.
Nullus vestrûm est innöcens.	Illo tempöre.
Ille terræ est Domïnus.	Illum juvënem.

Discordia est pestis hujus urbis.
Idem homo in domo est.

NOTE. The teacher should question on the derivation of words, etc.

LESSON XX.

(Review Lesson XIX.)

DEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *he, himself*, etc.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum.	N, ipsi,	ipsæ,	ipsa.
G. ipsïus,	ipsïus,	ipsïus.	G. ipsörum,	ârum,	örum.
D. ipsi,	ipsi,	ipsi.	D. ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis.
Ac. ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum.	Ac. ipsos,	ipsas,	ipsa.
V. _____	_____	_____	V. _____	_____	_____
Ab. ipso,	ipsâ,	ipso.	Ab. ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The *Relative* pronoun relates to a *noun* or *pronoun*, going before it, called the *antecedent*, as : *vir qui, the man who*; *femïna quæ, the woman who*, etc.

Qui, quæ, quod, *who, which, that.*

Singular.

M.	F.	N.
N. qui,	quæ,	quod.
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus.
D. cui,	cui,	cui.
Ac. quem,	quam,	quod.
V. _____	_____	_____
Ab. quo,	quâ	quo.

Plural.

M.	F.	N.
N. qui,	quæ,	quæ.
G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum.
D. queis, <i>or</i> quibus, etc.		
Ac. quos,	quas,	quæ.
V. _____	_____	_____
Ab. queis, <i>or</i> quibus, etc.		

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Interrogative pronouns are used in asking a question as : *quis*, or *quisnam* ? *who* ? *qui*, or *quinam* ? *which*, or *what* ? *quis vir*, *what man* ? *quæ femina* ? *what woman* ?

Quis, quæ, quod, *or* quid, *who? which? what?*

Singular.

M.	F.	N.
N. quis,	quæ,	quod <i>or</i> quid.
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus.
D. cui,	cui,	cui,
Ac. quem,	quam,	quod, <i>or</i> quid.
V. _____	_____	_____
Ab. quo,	quâ,	quo.

Plural.

N. qui,	quæ,	quæ.
G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum.
D. queis, or quibus, etc.		
Ac. quos,	quas,	quæ.
V. —	—	—
Ab. queis, or quibus, etc.		

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite pronouns are such as denote persons or things *indefinitely*, and are compounds ; as :

Aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid, or aliquod; <i>some one.</i>
Quisquam,	quæquam	quodquam. ; <i>any one.</i>
Quicunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque; <i>whosoever</i>

Indefinites are declined like the *Interrogative*.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive pronouns are derived from *Personal* pronouns ; as follows :

Meus,	-a,	-um,	<i>my, or my own,</i>	from ego.
Tuus,	-a,	-um,	<i>thy, or thy own,</i>	" tu.
Suus,	-a,	-um	<i>his, her, its,</i>	" sui.
Noster,	-tra,	-trum,	<i>our or our own,</i>	" nos.
Vester,	-tra,	-trum,	<i>your, or your own,</i>	" vos.

Meus, tuus, and suus, are declined like *bonus, -a -um*.
Noster and vester, like *ater, atra, atrum*.—Lesson VI.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Ille ipse est bonus magister.	Ipsi fontes.
Quis vir est in domo ?	Quis homo ?
Vir, qui est in portâ.	Quæ dona ?
Tua facta. Tu ipse. Ipse ego.	Nomen tuum.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

What individual?—What man?—What fountain?—
 He himself is a good master—What man is in the house?
 —I myself—Thou thyself—Thy name—Thy deeds—The
 man who is in the gate.

LESSON XXI.

(Review Lesson XX.)

VERBS.

A VERB is a word which expresses an *action* or *state*.

Verbs are of *two* kinds, *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

A *Transitive verb* expresses an *act* done by one person or thing *to another*.

An *Intransitive verb* expresses *being*, or a *state of being*, or an *action confined to the actor*.

Conjugation of the irregular intransitive verb,

SUM, *I am*.

Pres. Indic.

Present Infin.

Perf. Indic.

SUM,

ESSE,

FUI.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am*.

Sing. 1. Sum,

I am.

2. Es,

Thou art, or you are.

3. Est,

He, she, or it is.

Plur. 1. Sumus,

We are.

2. Estis,

Ye, or you are.

3. Sunt,

They are.

IMPERFECT TENSE, *was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Eram,	<i>I was.</i>
	2. Eras,	<i>Thou wert, or you were.</i>
	3. Erat,	<i>He, she, or it was.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Erāmus,	<i>We were.</i>
	2. Erātis,	<i>Ye, or you were.</i>
	3. Erant,	<i>They were.</i>

PERFECT TENSE, *have been, or was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fui,	<i>I have been.</i>
	2. Fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been.</i>
	3. Fuit,	<i>He, she, or it has been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuīmus,	<i>We have been.</i>
	2. Fuistis,	<i>Ye, or you have been.</i>
	3. Fuērunt, or fuēre,	<i>They have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE, *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fuēram,	<i>I had been,</i>
	2. Fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been.</i>
	3. Fuērat,	<i>He, she, or it had been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuerāmus,	<i>We had been.</i>
	2. Fuerātis,	<i>Ye, or you had been.</i>
	3. Fuērant,	<i>They had been.</i>

FUTURE TENSE, *shall, or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Ero,	<i>I shall be.</i>
	2. Eris,	<i>Thou wilt be.</i>
	3. Erit,	<i>He, she, or it will be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Erīmus.	<i>We shall be.</i>
	2. Eritis,	<i>Ye, or you will be.</i>
	3. Erunt,	<i>They will be.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fuēro,	<i>I shall have been.</i>
	2. Fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been.</i>
	3. Fuērit,	<i>He, she, or it will have been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuerīmus,	<i>We shall have been.</i>
	2. Fueritis,	<i>Ye, or you will have been.</i>
	3. Fuērint,	<i>They will have been.</i>

REM. 1. All the Exercises used, thus far, have been given without any reference to the collocation of the words; those which follow are taken from good classical writers.

REM. 2. The verb *Sum* is often compounded with prepositions, as: *Absum*, *I am absent*; *Adsum*, *I am present*; *Desum*, *I am wanting*; *Insum*, *I am in*; *Intersum*, *I am between*; *Subsum*, *I am near*; all these are conjugated like *Sum*.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Virgo est cum matre. Ego eram. Tempus erit.
 Erant loca montāna. Id est. Mons subērat.
 Meus ille caper fuit. Tu fuisti. Id fuērat.
 Spes omnis in te est. Cautus erat. Quis tu es?
 Nunquam majōre in pericūlo civitas fuit.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

I was—It is—The time shall be—Who art thou?—
 He was cautious—That was my he-goat—The mountain
 was near—Thou hast been—All hope is in thee—It had
 been—The virgin. is with *her* mother—The State was
 never in greater danger.

LESSON XXII.

(Review Lesson XXI.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can*.

Sing.	1. Sim,	<i>I may, or can be.</i>
	2. Sis,	<i>Thou mayst, or canst be.</i>
	3. Sit,	<i>He, etc., may or can be.</i>
Plur.	1. Simus,	<i>We may, or can be.</i>
	2. Sitis,	<i>Ye may, or can be.</i>
	3. Sint,	<i>They may, or can be.</i>

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Essem,	<i>I might, could, etc. be.</i>
	2. Esses,	<i>Thou mightst, etc. be.</i>
	3. Esset,	<i>He might, etc. be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Essēmus,	<i>We might, etc. be.</i>
	2. Essētis,	<i>Ye might, etc. be.</i>
	3. Essent,	<i>They might, etc. be.</i>

PERFECT, *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fuērim,	<i>I may have been.</i>
	2. Fuēris,	<i>Thou mayst have been.</i>
	3. Fuērit,	<i>He, etc., may have been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuerīmus,	<i>We may have been.</i>
	2. Fuerītis,	<i>Ye may have been.</i>
	3. Fuērint,	<i>They may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fuissem,	<i>I might, etc. have been.</i>
	2. Fuisses,	<i>Thou mightst, etc. have been.</i>
	3. Fuisset,	<i>He might, etc. have been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuissēmus,	<i>We might, etc. have been.</i>
	2. Fuissētis,	<i>Ye might, etc. have been.</i>
	3. Fuissent,	<i>They might, etc., have been.</i>

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Sit * mens sana in corpore sano. Sylvæ sint.
 Benigni simus adversus inimicos. Sit iter.
 Multi feliciōres essent, si boni semper fuissent.
 Bonis nunquam deērunť amīci.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN

The journey may be—Let us be kind towards enemies
 —Friends shall never be wanting to the good—May
 there be a sound mind in a sound body—Many would
 be more happy, if they had always been good.

* Sit, may, or let there be, etc.

QUESTIONS. What *English* word is derived from *benignus*?—from *sanus*?—from *sylvæ*?—from *adversus*?

LESSON XXIII.

(Review Lesson XXII.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Es, or Esto,	<i>Be thou.</i>
	3. Esto,	<i>Let him be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Este, or Estôte,	<i>Be ye, or be you.</i>
	3. Suntō,	<i>Let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Esse,	<i>To be.</i>
PERF.	Fuisse,	<i>To have been.</i>
FUT.	Esse, futūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to be.</i>
F. PERF.	Fuisse futūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. Futūrus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Estôte igītūr prudentes ut serpentes.

Es industrius, puer; nam vita est brevissīma.

Mens homīnis est nescia sortis futūræ.

In scholâ, discipūli, diligentes estôte.

Quæ futūra sint, ignōta sunt.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

O pupils! be diligent in school—Be ye therefore wise as serpents—Those things which are about to be, are unknown—The mind of man is ignorant of his future lot—Be industrious O boy! for life is very short.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* are the following *English* words derived? — *industrious*? — *mind*? — *future*? — *disciple*? — *diligent*? — *unknown*?

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	Subjunc.	Imperat.	Infinitive.	Participle.
<i>Pres.</i>	sum.	sim.	es, or	esse.	
<i>Imp.</i>	eram.	essem.	esto.		
<i>Perf.</i>	fui.	fuërim.		fuisse.	
<i>Plup.</i>	fuëram.	fuisse.		esse futurus.	futurus.
<i>Fut.</i>	ero.			fuisse futurus.	
<i>F. Perf.</i>	fuëro.				

Give the *signs* of all the tenses, and in all the moods, as : *Pres.*, *am*; *Imperf.*, *was*, etc.

LESSON XXIV.

(Review Lesson XXIII.)

CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

1. **REGULAR VERBS** are those in which the secondary parts are formed from the primary, according to certain rules.

2. **IRREGULAR VERBS** are those in which some of the secondary parts are not formed from the primary, according to rule.

Of regular Verbs in Latin there are four Conjugations, called the *First*, *Second*, *Third*, and *Fourth* Conjugations.

These are distinguished from each other by the *vowel before -RE*, in the *Present Infinitive Active*.

The **FIRST** has *ā* long* before *-re* of the Infinitive.

The **SECOND** has *ē* long before *-re* of the Infinitive.

The **THIRD** has *ě* short before *-re* of the Infinitive.

The **FOURTH** has *ī* long before *-re* of the Infinitive.

PRIMARY PARTS. n

The Primary Parts of the verb, from which all the other parts of the verb are formed, are *three*; viz :

The Present Tense Indicative.

The Perfect Tense Indicative.

The Supine in *-um*.

REM. The *infinitive present* is given in the Lexicons, because it contains the vowels distinguishing the conjugations.

NOTE. Giving these parts in their order is called *conjugating the Verb*; thus,

	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	1ST SUPINE.
1st. Conj.	Amo,	Amāre,	Amāvi,	Amātum
2d. "	Moneo,	Monēre,	Monui,	Monitum.
3d. "	Rěgo,	Regěre,	Rexi.	Rectum.
4th. "	Audio,	Audire,	Audivi,	Auditum.

REM. The manner of conjugating each verb being ascertained from the Dictionary, the other tenses may be found by the following rules.

* Except *Dāre* and its compounds, which have *ā* short.

FORMATION OF TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *The PRESENT* is a *primary tense* in which, by striking off *o*, *eo*, and *io*, we have the *First root*.

From the *First Root*, are formed the following parts, viz :

Imperfect Indicative.	Imperative Mood.
Future “	Present Infinitive.
Present Subjunctive.	Present Participle.
Imperfect “	Gerunds.

REM. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation prefix *i* to the endings of the parts formed from the first root, as in the fourth conjugation, except in the imperfect subjunctive.

2. *THE PERFECT* is a *primary tense*, in which, by striking off *i*, we have the *Second root*.

From the *Second Root* are formed the following parts, viz:

Pluperfect Indicative.	Perfect Subjunctive.
Fut. Perfect.	Pluperfect “
Perfect Infinitive.	

The Future Infinitive is compounded of the Future Participle active with *esse* or *fuisse* of the verb *SUM*.

3. *THE FIRST SUPINE* is a *primary part* of the verb; in which, by striking off *m*, we have the *Third Root*.

From the *Third Root*, are formed the following parts, viz :

Future Active Participle.
The Latter Supine is like the Third Root.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. From the *First Root* are formed the following parts
viz :

Present Indicative,	Present Subjunctive.
Imperfect “	Imperfect “
Future “	

Imperative Mood.

Present Infinitive.

Future Participle Passive.

The Perfect Participle is formed from the *Third Root*.
The other parts are compounds. (See Paradigms.)

LESSON XXV.

(Review Lesson XXIV.)

TERMINATIONS OF THE ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. (Add to 1st Root.)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Persons.

Persons.

	1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.
Conjugations {	1. -o,	-as,	-at.	{	1. -āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
	2. -eo,	-es,	-et.		2. -ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
	3. -o,	-is,	-it.		3. -īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
	4. -io,	-is,	-it.		4. -īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect Tense. (Add to 1st Root.)

1. -ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat.	{	1. -abāmus,	-abātis,	-ābant.
2. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat.		2. -ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
3. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat.		3. -ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
4. -iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat.		4. -iebāmus,	-iebātis,	-iēbant.

Perfect Tense. (Add to 2d Root.)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | | |
|--------|--------|------|
| 1. -i, | -isti, | -it. |
| 2. -i, | -isti, | -it. |
| 3. -i, | -isti, | -it. |
| 4. -i, | -isti, | -it. |

- | |
|------------------------------------|
| 1. -īmus, -istis, -ērunt, or -ēre. |
| 2. -īmus, -istis, -ērunt, or -ēre. |
| 3. -īmus, -istis, -ērunt, or -ēre. |
| 4. -īmus, -istis, -ērunt, or -ēre. |

Pluperfect Tense. (Add to 2d Root.)

- | | | |
|-----------|--------|--------|
| 1. -ēram, | -ēras, | -ērat. |
| 2. -ēram, | -ēras, | -ērat. |
| 3. -ēram, | -ēras, | -ērat. |
| 4. -ēram, | -ēras, | -ērat. |

- | |
|------------------------------|
| 1. -erāmus, -erātis, -ērānt. |
| 2. -erāmus, -erātis, -ērānt. |
| 3. -erāmus, -erātis, -ērānt. |
| 4. -erāmus, -erātis, -ērānt. |

Future Tense. (Add to 1st Root.)

- | | | |
|----------|--------|--------|
| 1. -ābo, | -ābis, | -ābit. |
| 2. -ēbo, | -ēbis, | -ēbit. |
| 3. -am, | -es, | -et. |
| 4. -iam, | -ies, | -iet. |

- | |
|------------------------------|
| 1. -abīmus, -abitis, -ābunt. |
| 2. -ebīmus, -ebitis, -ēbunt. |
| 3. -ēmus, -ētis, -ent. |
| 4. -iēmus, -iētis, -ient. |

Future Perfect Tense. (Add to 2d Root.)

- | | | |
|----------|--------|--------|
| 1. -ēro, | -ēris, | -ērit. |
| 2. -ēro, | -ēris, | -ērit. |
| 3. -ēro, | -ēris, | -ērit. |
| 4. -ēro, | -ēris, | -ērit. |

- | |
|------------------------------|
| 1. -erīmus, -eritis, -ērunt. |
| 2. -erīmus, -eritis, -ērunt. |
| 3. -erīmus, -eritis, -ērunt. |
| 4. -erīmus, -eritis, -ērunt. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. (Add to 1st Root.)

- | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|
| 1. -em, | -es, | -et. |
| 2. -eam, | -eas, | -eat. |
| 3. -am, | -as, | -at. |
| 4. -iam, | -ias, | -iat. |

- | |
|---------------------------|
| 1. -ēmus, -ētis, -ent. |
| 2. -eāmus, -eātis, -eant. |
| 3. -āmus, -ātis, -ant. |
| 4. -iāmus, -iātis, -iant. |

Imperfect Tense. (Add to 1st Root.)

- | | | |
|-----------|--------|--------|
| 1. -ārem, | -āres, | -āret. |
| 2. -ērem, | -ēres, | -ēret. |
| 3. -ērem, | -ēres, | -ēret. |
| 4. -īrem, | -īres, | -īret. |

- | |
|------------------------------|
| 1. -arēmus, -arētis, -ārent. |
| 2. -erēmus, -erētis, -ērent. |
| 3. -erēmus, -erētis, -ērent. |
| 4. -irēmus, -irētis, -īrent. |

Perfect Tense. (Add to 2d Root.)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. -ërim,	-ëris,	-ërit.	1. -erimus,	-eritis,	-ërunt.
2. -ërim,	-ëris,	-ërit.	2. -erimus,	-eritis,	-ërunt.
3. -ërim,	-ëris,	-ërit.	3. -erimus,	-eritis,	-ërunt.
4. -ërim,	-ëris,	-ërit.	4. -erimus,	-eritis,	-ërunt.

Pluperfect Tense. (Add to 2d Root.)

1. -issem,	-isses,	-isset.	1. -issëmus,	-issëtis,	-issent.
2. -issem,	-isses,	-isset.	2. -issëmus,	-issëtis,	-issent.
3. -issem,	-isses,	-isset.	3. -issëmus,	-issëtis,	-issent.
4. -issem,	-isses,	-isset.	4. -issëmus,	-issëtis,	-issent.

Imperative Mood. (Add to 1st Root.)

1. ———	-a, or -āto,	-āto.	1. —	-āte, or -atōte,	-anto.
2. ———	-e, or -ēto,	-ēto.	2. —	-ēte, or -etōte,	-ento.
3. ———	-e, or -īto,	-īto.	3. —	-īte, or -itōte,	-unto.
4. ———	-i, or -īto,	-īto.	4. —	-īte, or -itōte,	-iunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.*

Present. (Add to 1st Root.) *Perfect.* (Add to 2d Root.)

1.	2.	3.	4.	1.	2.	3.	4.
-āre,	-ēre,	-ēre,	-īre.	-isse,	-isse,	-isse,	-isse.

PARTICIPLES.

Present. (Add to 1st Root.) *Future.* (Add to 3d Root.)

1.	2.	3.	4.	1.	2.	3.	4.
-ans,	-ens,	-ens,	-iens.	-rus,	-rus,	-rus,	-rus.

GERUNDS. (Add to 1st. Root.)

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Ab.
1.	-andum,	-andi,	-ando,	-andum,	-ando.
2.	-endum,	-endi,	-endo,	-endum,	-endo.
3.	-endum,	-endi,	-endo,	-endum,	-endo.
4.	-iendum,	-iendi,	-iendo,	-iendum,	-iendo.

SUPINES. (Add to 3d Root.)

1.	2.	3.	4.	
Former. m.	m.	m.	m.	Latter. Same as third Root.

* The Future Infinitive is made up of the Future Active Part, and the Pres. and Perf Inf. of Sum.

LESSON XXVI.

(Review Lesson XXV.)

TERMINATIONS OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. (Add to 1st Root.)

1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
1. -or,	-āris, or	-āre, -ātur.	1. -āmur,	-amīni,	-antur.
2. -eor,	-ēris, or	-ēre, -ētur.	2. -ēmur,	-emīni,	-entur.
3. -or,	-ēris, or	-ēre, -ītur.	3. -īmur,	-imīni,	-untur.
4. -ior,	-īris, or	-īre, -ītur.	4. -īmur,	-imīni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect Tense. (Add to 1st Root.)

SINGULAR.

1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
1. -ābar,	-ēbar,	-ēbar,	-iēbar.
2. -abāris, or	-ebāris, or	-ebāris, or	-iebāris, or
-abāre,	-ebāre,	-ebāre,	-iebāre.
3. -abātur,	-ebātur,	-ebātur,	-iebātur.

PLURAL.

1. -abāmur,	-ebāmur,	-ebāmur,	-iebāmur.
2. -abamīni,	-ebamīni,	-ebamīni,	-iebamīni.
3. -abantur,	-ebantur,	-ebantur,	-iebantur.

Perfect Tense.

The *Perfect* is a compound tense, made up of the *Perfect Participle* and the *Present* and *Perfect* tenses *Indic. Mood* of the verb SUM.

The *Perfect* will be given in the Paradigms which follow.

Pluperfect Tense.

The *Pluperfect* is a compound tense, made up of the *Perfect Participle*, and the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* Tenses *Indic. Mood*, of the verb SUM.

The *Pluperfect* will also be given in the Paradigms which follow.

NOTE. The teacher should labor to make the pupil understand the *Compound Passive Voice*.

<i>Future. (Add to 1st Root.)</i>				
	<i>1st Conj.</i>	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>
<i>Singular</i>	1. -ābor,	-ēbor,	-ar,	-iar.
	2. -abēris, or -abēre,	-ebēris, or -ebēre,	-ēris, or -ēre,	-iēris, or -iēre.
	3. -abītur,	-ebītur,	-ētur,	-iētur.
<i>Plur.</i>	1. -abīmur,	-ebīmur,	-ēmur,	-iēmur.
	2. -abimīni,	-ebimīni,	-emīni,	-iemīni.
	3. -abuntur,	-ebuntur,	-entur,	-ientur.

Future Perfect.

The *Future Perfect* is a compound tense made up of the *Perfect Participle* and the *Future Perfect* of the verb *SUM*.

The *Future Perfect* will be given in the Paradigms which follow.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. (Add to 1st Root.)

1. -er, -ēris, or -ēre, -ētur.	1. -ēmur, -emīni, -entur.
2. -ear, -eāris, or -eāre, -eātur.	2. -eāmur, -eamīni, -eantur.
3. -ar, -āris, or -āre, -ātur.	3. -āmur, -amīni, -antur.
4. -iar, -iāris, or -iāre, -iātur.	4. -iāmur, -iamīni, -iantur.

Imperfect Tense. (Add to 1st Root.)

	<i>1st Conj.</i>	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>
<i>Singular.</i>	1. -ārer,	-ērer,	-ērer,	-īrer.
	2. -arēris, or -arēre,	-erēris, or -erēre,	-erēris, -erēre,	-irēris, or -irēre.
	3. -arētur,	-erētur,	-erētur,	-irētur.
<i>Plur.</i>	1. -arēmur,	-erēmur,	-erēmur,	-irēmur.
	2. -aremīni,	-eremīni,	-eremīni,	-iremīni.
	3. -arentur,	-erentur,	-erentur,	-irentur.

Perfect Tense.

The *Perfect* is a compound tense, made up of the *Perfect Participle* and the *Present* and *Perfect* Tenses, *Subjunctive Mood*, of the verb *SUM*.

The *Perfect* will be given in the Paradigms which follow.

Pluperfect Tense.

The *Pluperfect* is a compound tense, made up of the *Perfect Participle* and the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* tenses, *Subjunctive Mood*, of the verb *SUM*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD. (Add to 1st Root.)

1. ——— -āre, or -ātor, -ātor.	1. ——— -amīni, -antur.
2. ——— -ēre, or -ētor, -ētor.	2. ——— -emīni, -entor.
3. ——— -ēre, or -ītor, -ītor.	3. ——— -imīni, -untor.
4. ——— -īre, or -ītor, -ītor.	4. ——— -imīni, -iuntor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. (Add to 1st Root.)

1. -āri:—	2. -ēri:—	3. -i:—	4. -īri.
-----------	-----------	---------	----------

Perfect Infinitive.

The *Perfect Infinitive* is a compound tense, made up of the *Perfect Participle*, and the *Present* and *Perfect Infinitive* of the verb SUM.

Future Infinitive.

The *Future Infinitive* is also a compound tense, made up of the *Former Supine* and *iri*; the *Pres. Inf. of Eo*.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. (Add to 3d Root.) *Future.* (Add to 1st Root.)

1. -s.	1. -andus.
2. -s.	2. -endus.
3. -s.	3. -endus.
4. -s.	4. -iendus.

REM. Every verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood has its subject or nominative expressed or understood.

The nominative of the first person singular is always *Ego*—plural *nos*;—of the second person singular, always *tu*,—plural *vos*; and of the third person, the nominative, whether singular or plural, is a *noun* or *pronoun*, etc., denoting some person or thing spoken of.

The nominative of the first or second person being evident from the termination, is usually understood. In the following Paradigms, the nominative to be supplied in the third person singular, is *ille*, plural *illi*.

LESSON XXVII.

(Review Lesson XXVI.)

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>Amo,</i>	<i>amāre,</i>	<i>amāvi,</i>	<i>amātum, To love</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *love, do love, am loving.*

<i>S. 1. Am-o,</i>	<i>I love, do love, am loving.</i>
<i>2. Am-as,</i>	<i>Thou lovest, dost love, art loving.</i>
<i>3. Am-at,</i>	<i>He loves, does love, is loving.</i>
<i>P. 1. Am-āmus,</i>	<i>We love, do love, are loving.</i>
<i>2. Am-ātis,</i>	<i>Ye, or you love, do love, are loving.</i>
<i>3. Am-ant,</i>	<i>They love, do love, are loving.</i>

IMPERFECT, *loved, did love, was loving.*

<i>S. 1. Am-ābam,</i>	<i>I loved, did love, was loving.</i>
<i>2. Am-ābas,</i>	<i>Thou lovedst, didst love, was loving.</i>
<i>3. Am-ābat,</i>	<i>He loved, did love, was loving.</i>
<i>P. 1. Am-abāmus,</i>	<i>We loved, did love, were loving.</i>
<i>2. Am-abātis,</i>	<i>Ye loved, did love, were loving.</i>
<i>3. Am-ābant,</i>	<i>They loved, did love, were loving.</i>

PERFECT DEF., *have loved: INDEF., loved, did love.*

<i>S. 1. Am-āvi,</i>	<i>I have loved, loved, did love.</i>
<i>2. Am-āvisti,</i>	<i>Thou hadst loved, lovedst, didst love.</i>
<i>3. Am-āvit,</i>	<i>He has loved, loved, did love.</i>
<i>P. 1. Am-āvimus,</i>	<i>We have loved, loved, did love.</i>
<i>2. Am-āvistis,</i>	<i>Ye have loved, loved, did love.</i>
<i>3. Am-āvērunt or -ēre,</i>	<i>They have loved, loved, did love.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had loved.*

- S. 1. Am-āvēram, *I had loved.*
 2. Am-āvēras, *Thou hadst loved.*
 3. Am-āvērat, *He had loved.*
 P. 1. Am-āvērāmus, *We had loved.*
 2. Am-āvērātis, *Ye had loved.*
 3. Am-āvērant, *They had loved.*

FUTURE, *shall, or will love.*

- S. 1. Am-ābo, *I shall, or will love.*
 2. Am-ābis, *Thou shalt, or wilt love.*
 3. Am-ābit, *He shall, or will love.*
 P. 1. Am-ābīmus, *We shall, or will love.*
 2. Am-ābitis, *Ye shall, or will love.*
 3. Am-ābunt, *They shall, or will love.*

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall, will have loved.*

- S. 1. Am-āvēro, *I shall, or will have loved.*
 2. Am-āvēris, *Thou shalt, or wilt have loved.*
 3. Am-āvērit, *He shall, or will have loved.*
 P. 1. Am-āvērīmus, *We shall, or will have loved.*
 2. Am-āvērītis, *Ye shall, or will have loved.*
 3. Am-āvērint, *They shall, or will have loved.*

EXERCISE.

ADDITIONAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

RULE IX. A transitive verb in the active voice governs the *accusative*.

RULE X. One verb governs another as its object in the infinitive.

RULE XI. The subject of the infinitive is put in the *Accusative*.

RULE XII. Adverbs are joined to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, to modify and limit their signification.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Avidè expecto tuas litēras.
 Virtutem enim amāvi illius viri.
 Hæc ad id tempus Cæsar ignorābat.
 Cato populum inflamavērat contra legem.
 Hispāni flumen transnavēre.
 Quid hic stabas? Cætēra ego curābo.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

I am expecting thy letters earnestly.
 Cato had inflamed the people.
 I will take care of the rest.
 Why were you standing here.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* are the following *English* words derived? — *expect*? — *letter* — *virtue*? — *ignorant*? — *inflame*? — *people*? — *stand*?

LESSON XXVIII.

(Review Lesson XXVII.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can love*.

S. 1. Am-em,	<i>I may, or can love.</i>
2. Am-es,	<i>Thou mayst, or canst love.</i>
3. Am-et,	<i>He may, or can love.</i>
P. 1. Am-ēmus,	<i>We may, or can love.</i>
2. Am-ētis,	<i>Ye may, or can love.</i>
3. Am-ent,	<i>They may, or can love.</i>

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should.*

- S. 1. Am-ārem, *I might, etc. love.*
 2. Am-āres, *Thou mightst, etc. love.*
 3. Am-āret, *He might, etc. love.*
 P. 1. Am-ārēmus, *We might, etc. love.*
 2. Am-ārētis, *Ye might, etc. love.*
 3. Am-ārent, *They might, etc. love.*

PERFECT, *may have loved.*

- S. 1. Am-āvërim, *I may have loved.*
 2. Am-āvëris, *Thou mayst have loved.*
 3. Am-āvërit, *He may have loved.*
 P. 1. Am-āverīmus, *We may have loved.*
 2. Am-āverītis, *Ye may have loved.*
 3. Am-āvërint, *They may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have loved.*

- S. 1. Am-āvissem, *I might, etc. have loved.*
 2. Am-āvisses, *Thou mightst, etc. have loved.*
 3. Am-āvisset, *He might, etc. have loved.*
 P. 1. Am-āvissēmus, *We might, etc. have loved.*
 2. Am-āvissētis, *Ye might, etc. have loved.*
 3. Am-āvissent, *They might, etc. have loved.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Peccātum amīci, velut tuum, recte putes.

Orābat eos ne trucidārent filium suum.

Ille explorāvërit rem diligenter.

Revocēmus homīnem.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Let us recall the man.

He besought them that they would not slay his son.

You may, rightly, consider the fault of a friend as your own.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* are the following words derived?
—think? —explore? —revokes? —diligently?

LESSON XXIX.

(Review Lesson XXVIII.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-ā, or am-āto,	<i>Love thou.</i>
3. Am-āto,	<i>Let him love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-āte, or am-ātōte,	<i>Love ye.</i>
3. Am-anto.	<i>Let them love.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>PRES.</i> Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>PERF.</i> Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Esse amātūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
<i>F. PERF.</i> Fuisse amātūrus, -a -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRES.</i> Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Am-ātūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to love.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i> Am-andum,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Am-andi,	<i>Of loving.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Am-ando,	<i>To loving.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Am-andum,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Am-ando,	<i>With, in, etc. loving.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i> Am-ātum,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Latter.</i> Am-ātu,	<i>To be loved, to love.</i>

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

NOTE. The pupil should always give a Synopsis of the mood in parsing.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
<i>PRES.</i>	Amo.	Amem.	Amā,	Amāre.	Am-
<i>IMP.</i>	Amābam.	Amārem.			ans.
<i>PERF.</i>	Amāvi.	Amāvērīm.		Amāvisse.	
<i>PLUP.</i>	Amāvēram.	Amāvīssēm.			
<i>FUT.</i>	Amābo.			Esse amātūrus.	Amā-
<i>F. PERF.</i>	Amāvēro.			Fuisse amātūrus.	tūrus.

EXERCISE.

RULE XIII. *Participles*, like *adjectives*, agree with nouns, in gender, number, and case.

REM. *Present Participles* are declined like *prudens*; *Future Participles*, like *bonus*, -a, -um.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Propĕra tu. Tu me servāto.

Nos adjūva. Tu me juva.

Spero me causam probavisse.

Cæsar æstuans milites castigat.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

I hope that I have proved my cause—Do thou preserve me—Cæsar, raging, chastised the soldiers—Assist us.

LESSON XXX.

(Review Lesson XXIX.)

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.

Amor,

Pres. Inf.

Amāri,

Perf. Part.

Amātus, *To be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am loved.*

S. 1. Am-or,

2. Am-āris, or -āre,

3. Am-atur,

P. 1. Am-āmur,

2. Am-āmini,

3. Am-antur,

I am loved.

Thou art loved.

He is loved.

We are loved.

Ye are loved.

They are loved.

IMPERFECT, *was loved.*

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-ābar, | <i>I was loved.</i> |
| 2. Am-ābāris, or ābāre, | <i>Thou wast loved.</i> |
| 3. Am-ābātur, | <i>He was loved.</i> |
| P. 1. Am-ābāmur, | <i>We were loved.</i> |
| 2. Am-ābāmini, | <i>Ye were loved.</i> |
| 3. Am-ābantur, | <i>They were loved.</i> |

PERFECT, *have been loved, was loved, am loved.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| S. 1. Amātus sum, or fui, | <i>I have been loved, etc.</i> |
| 2. Amātus es, or fuisti, | <i>Thou hast been loved.</i> |
| 3. Amātus est, or fuit, | <i>He has been loved.</i> |
| P. 1. Amāti sūmus, or fuīmus, | <i>We have been loved.</i> |
| 2. Amāti estis, or fuistis, | <i>Ye have been loved.</i> |
| 3. Amāti sunt, or fuērunt, | <i>They have been loved.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *had been loved.*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| S. 1. Amātus ēram, or fuēram, | <i>I had been loved.</i> |
| 2. Amātus ēras, or fuēras, | <i>Thou hadst been loved.</i> |
| 3. Amātus ērat, or fuērat, | <i>He had been loved.</i> |
| P. 1. Amāti ērāmus, or fuērāmus, | <i>We had been loved.</i> |
| 2. Amāti ērātis, or fuērātis, | <i>Ye had been loved.</i> |
| 3. Amāti ērant, or fuērant, | <i>They had been loved.</i> |

FUTURE, *shall, or will be loved.*

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-ābor, | <i>I shall, or will be loved.</i> |
| 2. Am-ābēris, or -ābēre, | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt be loved.</i> |
| 3. Am-ābitur, | <i>He shall, or will be loved.</i> |
| P. 1. Am-ābīmur, | <i>We shall, or will be loved.</i> |
| 2. Am-ābimīni, | <i>Ye shall, or will be loved.</i> |
| 3. Am-ābuntur, | <i>They shall, or will be loved.</i> |

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall, or will have been loved.*

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| S. 1. Amātus fuēro, | <i>I shall have been loved.</i> |
| 2. Amātus fuēris, | <i>Thou wilt have been loved.</i> |
| 3. Amātus fuērit, | <i>He will have been loved.</i> |
| P. 1. Amāti fuerīmus, | <i>We shall have been loved.</i> |
| 2. Amāti fuerītis, | <i>Ye will have been loved.</i> |
| 3. Amāti fuērīnt, | <i>They will have been loved.</i> |

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Hoc consilium Cæsaris non probātur.

Multum ille jactātus est alto.

Cuncta Græcia liberāta est.

Nemo vulnerātus fuērat.

Ille condemnabitur.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

He was much tossed upon the deep.

No one had been wounded.

This design of Cæsar is not approved.

All Greece has been liberated.

He will be condemned.

QUESTIONS. From what Latin words are the following derived?
 —liberate? —condemn? —counsel? —approve?

LESSON XXXI.

(Review Lesson XXX.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can be loved*.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-er, | <i>I may, or can be loved.</i> |
| 2. Am-ēris, or ēre, | <i>Thou mayst, or canst be loved.</i> |
| 3. Am-ētur, | <i>He may, or can be loved.</i> |
| P. 1. Am-ēmur, | <i>We may, or can be loved.</i> |
| 2. Am-emīni, | <i>Ye may, or can be loved.</i> |
| 3. Am-entur, | <i>They may, or can be loved.</i> |

IMPERFECT, might, could, would, or should be loved.

- S. 1. Am-ārer, *I might, etc. be loved.*
 2. Am-ārēris, or -ārēre, *Thou mightst, etc., be loved.*
 3. Am-ārētur, *He might, etc. be loved.*
 P. 1. Am-ārēmur, *We might, etc. be loved.*
 2. Am-ārēmīni, *Ye might, etc. be loved.*
 3. Am-ārentur, *They might, etc. be loved.*

PERFECT, may have been loved.

- S. 1. Amātus sim, or fuērim, *I may have been loved.*
 2. Amātus sis, or fuēris, *Thou mayest have been loved.*
 3. Amātus sit, or fuērit, *He may have been loved.*
 P. 1. Amāti sīmus, or fuerīmus, *We may have been loved.*
 2. Amāti sītis, or fuerītis, *Ye may have been loved.*
 3. Amāti sint, or fuērint, *They may have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT, might, could, would, or should have been loved.

1. Amātus essem, or fuissem, *I might have been loved.*
 2. Amātus esses, or fuisses, { *Thou mightst have been loved.*
 3. Amātus esset, or fuisset, *He might have been loved.*
 P. 1. Amāti essēmus, or fuissēmus, *We might have been loved.*
 2. Amāti essētis, or fuissētis, *Ye might have been loved.*
 3. Amāti essent, or fuissent, { *They might have been loved.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Dictātor creātus ut bellum renovarētur.

Non dubīto, quin honōrer ab omnībus.

Non dubīto, quin ab amīcis amātus sim.

Pecunia detur.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

I do not doubt that I have been loved by my friends.

I do not doubt that I am honored by all.

Let money be given.

A Dictator was created, that the war might be renewed.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* are the following *English* words derived ?—*create* ?—*dictator* ?—*doubt* ?—*renovate* ?—*announce* ?

LESSON XXXII.

(Review Lesson XXXI.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Am-āre, or -ātor,	<i>Be thou loved.</i>
	3. Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Am-amini,	<i>Be ye loved.</i>
	3. Am-antur,	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>PRES.</i>	Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>PERF.</i>	Esse, or fuisse amātus,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
<i>FUT.</i>	Am-ātum iri,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

The *Perfect* and *Future* Participles are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um.

<i>PERF.</i>	Amātus, -a, -um,	{ <i>Loved, being loved, having been loved.</i>
<i>FUT.</i>	Amandus, -a, um,	

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
<i>PRES.</i>	Amor.	Amer.	Amāre.	Amāri.	
<i>IMP.</i>	Amābar.	Amārer.			
<i>PERF.</i>	Amātus sum.	Amātus sim.		Esse or fuisse amātus.	Amātus.
<i>PLUR.</i>	Amātus eram.	Amātus essem.			
<i>FUT.</i>	Amābor.			Amātum iri.	Amandus.
<i>F. P.</i>	Amātus fuero.				

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Parens irātus, in se est crudelissimus.

Homo perturbātus excitat Simonīdem.

Revocandi milītes erant.

Cicēro erat dignus amāri.

Litērae laudantur.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

The man being much disturbed arouses Simonides.

Cicero was worthy to be loved.

A parent, enraged, is most cruel against himself.

The soldiers were to be recalled.

Let the letters be praised.

LESSON XXXIII.

(Review Lesson XXXII.)

1. Give the *sign* of each Tense in all the Moods.
2. Name the *Roots*, state the manner in which they are formed, and name the Tenses formed from each.
3. Give a *Synopsis* of *both voices*, and *write Tables* of them on the *black-board*.

LESSON XXXIV.

(Review the Synopsis of 1st Conjugation.)

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

*Pres. Ind., Pres. Inf., Perf. Ind., Supine.*Moneo, monēre, monui, monitum, *To advise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, I advise, do advise, am advising.

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| S. 1. Mon-eo, | <i>I advise, do advise, etc.</i> |
| 2. Mon-es, | <i>Thou advisest, dost advise, etc.</i> |
| 3. Mon-et, | <i>He advises, does advise, etc.</i> |
| P. 1. Mon-ēmus, | <i>We advise, do advise, etc.</i> |
| 2. Mon-ētis, | <i>Ye advise, do advise, etc.</i> |
| 3. Mon-ent, | <i>They advise, do advise, etc.</i> |

IMPERFECT, advised, did advise, was advising.

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| S. 1. Mon-ēbam, | <i>I advised, did advise, etc.</i> |
| 2. Mon-ēbas, | <i>Thou advisedst, didst advise, etc.</i> |
| 3. Mon-ēbat, | <i>He advised, did advise, etc.</i> |
| P. 1. Mon-ēbāmus, | <i>We advised, did advise, etc.</i> |
| 2. Mon-ēbātis, | <i>Ye advised, did advise, etc.</i> |
| 3. Mon-ēbant, | <i>They advised, did advise, etc.</i> |

PERFECT DEF., have advised ; INDEF., advised, did advise.

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| S. 1. Monu-i, | <i>I have advised, etc.</i> |
| 2. Monu-isti, | <i>Thou hast advised, etc.</i> |
| 3. Monu-it, | <i>He has advised, etc.</i> |
| P. 1. Monu-īmus, | <i>We have advised.</i> |
| 2. Monu-istis, | <i>Ye have advised, etc.</i> |
| 3. Monu-ērunt, or ēre, | <i>They have advised, etc.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *had advised.*

- S. 1. Monu-eram, *I had advised, etc.*
 2. Monu-eras, *Thou hadst advised.*
 3. Monu-erat, *He had advised.*
 P. 1. Monu-eramus, *We had advised.*
 2. Monu-eratis, *Ye had advised.*
 3. Monu-erant, *They had advised.*

FUTURE, *shall, or will advise.*

- S. 1. Mon-ēbo, *I shall, or will advise.*
 2. Mon-ēbis, *Thou shalt or wilt advise.*
 3. Mon-ēbit, *He shall, or will advise.*
 P. 1. Mon-ēbimus, *We shall, or will advise.*
 2. Mon-ēbitis, *Ye shall, or will advise.*
 3. Mon-ēbunt, *They shall, or will advise.*

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall, or will have advised.*

- S. 1. Monu-ero, *I shall, or will have advised.*
 2. Monu-eris, *Thou shalt, or wilt have advised.*
 3. Monu-erit, *He shall, or will have advised.*
 P. 1. Monu-erimus, *We shall, or will have advised.*
 2. Monu-eritis, *Ye shall, or will have advised.*
 3. Monu-erint, *They shall, or will have advised.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Is in provinciâ tuâ negotia habet.
 Unum manēbat illud solatium.
 Nomenque tuum laudesque manēbunt.
 Scipio delēvit Carthaginē.
 Vulpes vidērat leōnem.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Both thy name and praises shall remain.
 He has business in thy province.
 That solace alone remained.
 Scipio destroyed Carthage.
 A fox had seen a lion.

LESSON XXXV.

(Review Lesson XXXIV.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may, or can advise.*

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Mon-eam, | <i>I may, or can advise.</i> |
| 2. Mon-eas, | <i>Thou mayest, or canst advise.</i> |
| 3. Mon-eat, | <i>He may, or can advise.</i> |
| P. 1. Mon-eāmus, | <i>We may, or can advise.</i> |
| 2. Mon-eātis, | <i>Ye may, or can advise.</i> |
| 3. Mon-eant, | <i>They may or can advise.</i> |

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should advise.*

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| S. 1. Mon-ērem, | <i>I might, could, etc. advise.</i> |
| 2. Mon-ēres, | <i>Thou mightst, couldst, etc., advise.</i> |
| 3. Mon-ēret, | <i>He might, could, etc. advise.</i> |
| P. 1. Mon-ērēmus, | <i>We might, could, etc. advise.</i> |
| 2. Mon-ērētis, | <i>Ye might, could, etc. advise.</i> |
| 3. Mon-ērent, | <i>They might, could, etc. advise.</i> |

PERFECT, *may have advised.*

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| S. 1. Monu-ērim, | <i>I may have advised.</i> |
| 2. Monu-ēris, | <i>Thou mayest have advised.</i> |
| 3. Monu-ērit, | <i>He may have advised.</i> |
| P. 1. Monu-erīmus, | <i>We may have advised.</i> |
| 2. Monu-erītis, | <i>Ye may have advised.</i> |
| 3. Monu-erint, | <i>They may have advised.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have advised.*

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| S. 1. Monu-issem, | <i>I might, etc., have advised.</i> |
| 2. Monu-isses, | <i>Thou mightst, etc., have advised.</i> |
| 3. Monu-isset, | <i>He might, etc., have advised.</i> |
| P. 1. Monu-issēmus, | <i>We might, etc., have advised.</i> |
| 2. Monu-issētis, | <i>Ye might, etc., have advised.</i> |
| 3. Monu-issent, | <i>They might, etc., have advised.</i> |

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Monēbat ut vidēret magnificas portas.

Putat ut me monuisset cornix.

Putāvit ut rex eam rem non negāre debēret.

Sol magnificentissimum spectaculum præbuisset.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

He thought that the king ought not to deny that thing.

He advised that he should see the magnificent gates.

The sun might have offered a most magnificent spectacle.

He thinks that the crow might have admonished me.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* words are the following derived?
—*spectacle*? — *magnificent*? — *negative*? — *portal*?

LESSON XXXVI.

(Review Lesson XXXV.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. Mon-ē, or -ēto,	<i>Advise thou.</i>
3. Mon-ēto,	<i>Let him advise.</i>
P. 2. Mon-ēte, or -ētōte,	<i>Advise ye.</i>
3. Mon-ento,	<i>Let them advise.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Mon-ēre,	<i>To advise.</i>
PERF. Monu-isse,	<i>To have advised.</i>
FUT. Esse monitūrus,	<i>To be about to advise.</i>
F. PERF. Fuisse monitūrus,	<i>To have been about to advise</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Mon-ens,	<i>Advising.</i>
FUT.	Monitūrus,	<i>About to advise.</i>

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Mon-endum,	<i>Advising.</i>
Gen.	Mon-endi,	<i>Of advising.</i>
Dat.	Mon-endo,	<i>To advising.</i>
Acc.	Mon-endum,	<i>Advising.</i>
Ab.	Mon-endo,	<i>With, etc., advising</i>

SUPINES.

Former,	Mon-ĭtum,	<i>To advise.</i>
Latter,	Mon-ĭtu,	<i>To be advised, or to advise.</i>

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
PRES.	Moneo.	Moneam.	Monē.	Monēre.	Mon-
IMP.	Monēbam.	Monērem.			ens.
PERF.	Monui.	Monuērim.		Monuisse.	
PLUP.	Monuēram.	Monuīsssem.			
FUT.	Monēbo.			Esse monitūrus.	Moni-
F. P.	Monuēro.			Fuisse monitūrus.	tūrus.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Obs. *Participles, gerunds, and supines, being parts of verbs, govern the cases of the verbs from which they are derived.*

Eum tenentem aras videt.

Huc vento cursum tenuisse debēbat.

Natosque pater nova bella moventes vocābat.

Hæc fabūla docet, bonos mortem non timēre.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

This fable teaches that the good do not fear death.

The father called his sons exciting new wars.

He ought to have held his course hither, by the wind.

He sees him holding the altars.

LESSON XXXVII.

(Review Lesson XXXVI.)

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Present Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Participle.</i>
Moneor,	Monēri,	Monitus, <i>To be advised.</i>

PRESENT TENSE, *am advised.*

S. 1. Mon-eor,	<i>I am advised.</i>
2. Mon-ēris, or -ēre,	<i>Thou art advised.</i>
3. Mon-etur,	<i>He is advised.</i>
P. 1. Mon-ēmur,	<i>We are advised.</i>
2. Mon-emini,	<i>Ye are advised.</i>
3. Mon-entur,	<i>They are advised.</i>

IMPERFECT, *was advised.*

S. 1. Mon-ēbar,	<i>I was advised.</i>
2. Mon-ēbaris, or -ēbāre,	<i>Thou wast advised.</i>
3. Mon-ēbatur,	<i>He was advised.</i>
P. 1. Mon-ēbāmur,	<i>We were advised.</i>
2. Mon-ēbāmini,	<i>Ye were advised.</i>
3. Mon-ēbantur,	<i>They were advised.</i>

PERFECT, *have been, was, am.*

S. 1. Monitus sum, or fui,	<i>I have been advised, etc.</i>
2. Monitus es, or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been advised, etc.</i>
3. Monitus est, or fuit,	<i>He has been advised, etc.</i>
P. 1. Moniti sumus, or fuimus,	<i>We have been advised, etc.</i>
2. Moniti estis, or fuistis,	<i>Ye have been advised, etc.</i>
3. Moniti sunt, or fuerunt,	<i>They have been advised, etc.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had been.*

- S. 1. Monītus ēram, or fuēram, *I had been advised.*
 2. Monītus ēras, or fuēras, *Thou hadst been advised.*
 3. Monītus ērat, or fuērat, *He had been advised.*
 P. 1. Monīti ērāmus, or fuērāmus, *We had been advised.*
 2. Monīti erātis, or fuerātis, *Ye had been advised.*
 3. Monīti erant, or fuērant, *They had been advised.*

FUTURE, *shall, or will be.*

- S. 1. Mon-ēbor, *I shall, or will be advised.*
 2. Mon-ēbēris, or -ēbēre, *Thou shalt, or will be advised.*
 3. Mon-ēbitur, *He shall, or will be advised.*
 P. 1. Mon-ēbimur, *We shall, or will be advised.*
 2. Mon-ēbimīni, *Ye shall, or will be advised.*
 3. Mon-ēbuntur, *They shall, or will be advised.*

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall, or will have been.*

- S. 1. Monītus fuēro, *I shall have been advised.*
 2. Monītus fuēris, *Thou wilt have been advised.*
 3. Monītus fuērit, *He will have been advised.*
 P. 1. Monīti fuerīmus, *We shall have been advised.*
 2. Monīti fuerītis, *Ye will have been advised.*
 3. Monīti fuērint, *They will have been advised.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Jugurtha respondēre jussus est.

Cæsar magnus habebātur.

Ipse vidēbar compellāre virum.

Possunt quia posse videntur.

Per longum tempus detinēbor.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

They are able, because they seem to be able

I shall be detained during a long time.

I myself seemed to address the man.

Cæsar was considered great.

LESSON XXXVIII.

(Review Lesson XXXVII.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may, or can be advised.*

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| S. 1. Mon-ear, | <i>I may, or can be advised.</i> |
| 2. Mon-eāris, or -eāre. | <i>Thou mayest, or canst be advised.</i> |
| 3. Mon-eātur, | <i>He may, or can be advised.</i> |
| P. 1. Mon-eāmur, | <i>We may, or can be advised.</i> |
| 2. Mon-eāminī, | <i>Ye may, or can be advised.</i> |
| 3. Mon-eantur, | <i>They may, or can be advised.</i> |

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should be.*

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| S. 1. Mon-ērer, | <i>I might, etc., be advised.</i> |
| 2. Mon-ērēris, or -ērēre, | <i>Thou mightst, etc., be advised.</i> |
| 3. Mon-ērētur, | <i>He might, etc., be advised.</i> |
| P. 1. Mon-ērēmur. | <i>We might, etc., be advised.</i> |
| 2. Mon-ērēmīni, | <i>Ye might, etc., be advised.</i> |
| 3. Mon-ērentur, | <i>They might, etc., be advised.</i> |

PERFECT, *may have been advised.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Monītus sim, or fuērim, | <i>I may have been advised.</i> |
| Monītus sis, or fuēris, | <i>Thou mayest have been advised</i> |
| Monītus sit, or fuērit, | <i>He may have been advised.</i> |
| Monīti sīmus, or fuerīmus, | <i>We may have been advised.</i> |
| Monīti sitis, or fuerītis,, | <i>Ye may have been advised.</i> |
| Monīti sint, or fuērint, | <i>They may have been advised.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have been.*

Monitus essem, *or* fuissem, *I might have been advised.*
 Monitus esses, *or* fuisses, *Thou mightst have been advised.*
 Monitus esset, *or* fuisset, *He might have been advised.*
 Moniti essēmus, *or* fuissēmus, *We might have been advised.*
 Moniti essētis, *or* fuissētis, *Ye might have been advised.*
 Moniti essent, *or* fuissent, *They might have been advised.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Si ego jussus essem a te, paruissem.
 Ne respublica ab inimicis teneretur.
 Hostes prohibeantur.
 Leves stipulæ adolerentur.
 Viæ obsiderentur.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

If I had been commanded by thee, I would have obeyed.

The light stubble might be burned.

Lest the Republic might be held by enemies.

The enemies may be hindered.

LESSON XXXIX.

(Review Lesson XXXVIII.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. Mon-ēre, <i>or</i> -ētor,	<i>Be thou advised.</i>
3. Mon-ētor,	<i>Let him be advised.</i>
P. 2. Mon-emini,	<i>Be ye advised.</i>
3. Mon-entor,	<i>Let them be advised.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mon-ēri,	<i>To be advised.</i>
PERF.	Esse, or fuisse monītus,	<i>To have been advised.</i>
FUT.	Monītum iri,	<i>To be about to be advised.</i>

PARTICIPLES

PERF.	Mon-ītus, -a, -um,	<i>Having been advised.</i>
FUT.	Mon-endus, -a, -um,	<i>To be advised.</i>

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunc.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Partic.</i>
PRES.	Moneor.	Monear.	Monēre,	Monēri.	
IMP.	Monēbar.	Monērer.			
PERF.	Monītus sum.	Monītus sim.		Esse, or fuisse monītus.	Monītus.
PLUP.	Monītus ēram.	Monītus essem.			Monen- dus.
FUT.	Monēbor.			Monītum iri.	
F. P.	Monītus fuēro.				

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Sunt hæc arma tenenda.
 Ova fovenda dabat.
 Jupiter miscēri probat popūlos.
 Lupus est retentus.
 Ille unus erat timendus.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Jupiter approves that the nations should be blended together.

These arms are to be retained.

The wolf is held back.

He alone was to be feared.

He gave the eggs to be warmed.

LESSON XL.

1. Give the signs of each Tense in all the Moods.
2. Name the *Roots*, the manner in which they are formed ; and name the Tenses formed from each.
3. Give a *Synopsis of both voices*, and *write tables of them on the black-board*.

LESSON XLI.

(Review the Synopsis of the 2d Conjugation.)

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Rego,	Reg-ere,	Rex-i,	Rectu-m, <i>To rule.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *rule, do rule, am ruling.*

S. 1. Reg-o,	<i>I rule, do rule, am ruling.</i>
2. Reg-is,	<i>Thou rulest, dost rule, art ruling.</i>
3. Reg-it,	<i>He rules, does rule, is ruling.</i>
P. 1. Reg-imus,	<i>We rule, do rule, are ruling.</i>
2. Reg-itis,	<i>Ye rule, do rule, are ruling.</i>
3. Reg-unt,	<i>They rule, do rule, are ruling.</i>

IMPERFECT, *I ruled, did rule, was ruling.*

S. 1. Reg-ēbam,	<i>I ruled, did rule, was ruling.</i>
2. Reg-ēbas,	<i>Thou ruledst, didst rule, wast ruling.</i>
3. Reg-ēbat,	<i>He ruled, did rule, was ruling.</i>
P. 1. Reg-ēbāmus,	<i>We ruled, did rule, were ruling.</i>
2. Reg-ēbātis,	<i>Ye ruled, did rule, were ruling.</i>
3. Reg-ēbant,	<i>They ruled, did rule, were ruling.</i>

PERF. DEF., *have ruled; IND., ruled, did rule.*

- S. 1. Rex-i, *I have ruled, ruled, did rule.*
 2. Rex-isti, *Thou hast ruled, ruledst, didst rule.*
 3. Rex-it, *He has ruled, ruled, did rule.*
 P. 1. Rex-imus, *We have ruled, ruled, did rule.*
 2. Rex-istis, *Ye have ruled, ruled, did rule.*
 3. Rex-erunt, or -ēre, *They have ruled, ruled, did rule.*

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled.*

- S. 1. Rex-eram, *I had ruled.*
 2. Rex-eras, *Thou hadst ruled.*
 3. Rex-erat, *He had ruled.*
 P. 1. Rex-erāmus, *We had ruled.*
 2. Rex-erātis, *Ye had ruled.*
 3. Rex-erant, *They had ruled.*

FUTURE, *shall, or will rule.*

- S. 1. Reg-am, *I shall, or will rule,*
 2. Reg-es, *Thou shalt, or wilt rule.*
 3. Reg-et, *He shall, or will rule.*
 P. 1. Reg-ēmus, *We shall, or will rule.*
 2. Reg-ētis, *Ye shall, or will rule.*
 3. Reg-ent, *They shall, or will rule.*

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall, or will have ruled.*

- S. 1. Rex-ero, *I shall, or will have ruled.*
 2. Rex-eris, *Thou shalt, or wilt have ruled.*
 3. Rex-erit, *He shall, or will have ruled.*
 P. 1. Rex-erimus, *We shall, or will have ruled.*
 2. Rex-eritis, *Ye shall, or will have ruled.*
 3. Rex-erunt, *They shall, or will have ruled.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Æolus tempestātes sonōras premit.

Quatuor centuriōnes oculos amisērunt.

Aquila in sublimi quercu nidum fecerat

Studiōsi puēri præmiū accipient.

Scribēbam ipse.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

An eagle had made a nest upon a lofty oak.

Æolus restrains the roaring tempests.

Four centurions have lost their eyes.

Studious boys shall receive a reward.

I myself wrote.

QUESTIONS. What *English* words are derived from *arguo*?—*—sublimis?—studiōsus?—sonōrus?—tempestas?*

LESSON XLII.

(Review Lesson XLI.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can* rule.

S. 1. Reg-am,	<i>I may, or can rule.</i>
2. Reg-as,	<i>Thou mayest, or canst rule.</i>
3. Reg-at,	<i>He may, or can rule.</i>
P. 1. Reg-āmus,	<i>We may, or can rule.</i>
2. Reg-ātis,	<i>Ye may, or can rule.</i>
3. Reg-ant,	<i>They may, or can rule.</i>

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should* rule.

S. 1. Reg-ērem,	<i>I might, etc., rule.</i>
2. Reg-eres,	<i>Thou mightst, etc., rule.</i>
3. Reg-ēret,	<i>He might, etc., rule.</i>
P. 1. Reg-ērēmus,	<i>We might, etc., rule.</i>
2. Reg-ērētis,	<i>Ye might, etc., rule.</i>
3. Reg-ērent,	<i>They might, etc., rule.</i>

PERFECT, *may have ruled.*

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| S. 1. Rex-ërim. | <i>I may have ruled.</i> |
| 2. Rex-ëris, | <i>Thou mayest have ruled.</i> |
| 3. Rex-ërit, | <i>He may have ruled.</i> |
| P. 1. Rex-erimus, | <i>We may have ruled.</i> |
| 2. Rex-eritis, | <i>Ye may have ruled.</i> |
| 3. Rex-erint, | <i>They may have ruled.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| S. 1. Rex-issem, | <i>I might, etc., have ruled.</i> |
| 2. Rex-isses, | <i>Thou mightest, etc. have ruled.</i> |
| 3. Rex-isset, | <i>He might, etc., have ruled.</i> |
| P. 1. Rex-issëmus, | <i>We might, etc., have ruled.</i> |
| 2. Rex-issëtis, | <i>Ye might, etc., have ruled.</i> |
| 3. Rex-issent, | <i>They might, etc., have ruled.</i> |

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Ejus indölem quum perspexisset Alcibiädes.
 Ut ipsum Ascanium ad mœnia ducat.
 Si unquam accepërit Albain.
 Pergäma cüm petëret.
 Postquam regis mortem cognovissent, decessërunt.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

When Alcibiades had perceived her disposition.
 That he might lead Ascanius himself to the ram-
 parts.
 After that they had heard of the death of the king,
 they departed.
 When she was going to the Trojan citadel.

LESSON XLIII.

(Review Lesson XLII.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. Reg-ě, or -ito,	<i>Rule thou.</i>
3. Reg-ito,	<i>Let him rule.</i>
P. 2. Reg-ite, or itôte,	<i>Rule ye.</i>
3. Reg-unto,	<i>Let them rule.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Reg-ěre,	<i>To rule.</i>
PERF.	Rex-isse,	<i>To have ruled.</i>
FUT.	Esse rectŭrus,	<i>To be about to rule.</i>
F. PERF.	Fuisse rectŭrus,	<i>To have been about to rule.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Reg-ens,	<i>Ruling.</i>
FUT.	Rectŭ-rus, -a, -um,	<i>About to rule.</i>

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Reg-endum,	<i>Ruling.</i>
Gen.	Reg-endi,	<i>Of ruling.</i>
Dat.	Reg-endo,	<i>To ruling.</i>
Acc.	Reg-endum,	<i>Ruling.</i>
Abl.	Reg-endo,	<i>With, etc., ruling.</i>

SUPINES.

Former,	Rectu-m,	<i>To rule.</i>
Latter,	Rectu,	<i>To rule, or to be ruled.</i>

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicat.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
PRES.	Rego	Regam.	Rege.	Regere.	Regens.
IMP.	Regēbam.	Regērem.			
PERF.	Rexi.	Rexērim.			
PLUP.	Rexēram.	Rexissem.			
FUT.	Regam.			Esse rectūrus.	Rectūrus.
F. PERF.	Rexēro.		Fuisse rectūrus.		

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Projice tela manu, sanguis meus!
 Solvite corde metum, Teucri.
 Teque amplexu ne subtrahere nostro.
 Dubitamus adhuc virtutem extendere factis?
 A solio regis traxitque *tremementem.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Do we hesitate still to extend our power by deeds?
 Free the fear from your heart, O Trojans!
 And do not withdraw thyself from our embrace.
 He dragged him trembling from the throne of the king.

Cast the weapons from your hand—my blood!

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* words are the following derived?
 —*subtract*?—*project*?—*extend*?—*fact*?—*manual*?—*solve*?

LESSON XLIV.

(Review Lesson XLIII.)

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.,</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.,</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Reg-or,	Reg-i,	Rectus, <i>To be ruled.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am ruled.*

S. 1. Reg-or,	<i>I am ruled.</i>
2. Reg-ēris, or -ēre,	<i>Thou art ruled.</i>
3. Reg-itur,	<i>He is ruled.</i>
P. 1. Reg-īmur,	<i>We are ruled.</i>
2. Reg-imīni,	<i>Ye are ruled.</i>
3. Reg-untur,	<i>They are ruled.</i>

* Supply eum.

IMPERFECT, *was ruled.*

- S. 1. Reg-ēbar, *I was ruled.*
 2. Reg-ēbāris, or -bāre, *Thou wast ruled.*
 3. Reg-ēbātur, *He was ruled.*
 P. 1. Reg-ēbāmur, *We were ruled.*
 2. Reg-ēbāmīni, *Ye were ruled.*
 3. Reg-ēbantur, *They were ruled.*

PERFECT, *have been ruled, was ruled, am ruled.*

- S. 1. Rectus sum, or fui, *I have been ruled.*
 2. Rectus es, or fuisti, *Thou hast been ruled.*
 3. Rectus est, or fuit, *He has been ruled.*
 P. 1. Recti sūmus, or fuīmus, *We have been ruled.*
 2. Recti estis, or fuistis, *Ye have been ruled.*
 3. Recti sunt, or fuērunt, or fuēre, *They have been ruled.*

PLUPERFECT, *had been ruled.*

- S. 1. Rectus ēram, or fuēram, *I had been ruled.*
 2. Rectus ēras, or fuēras, *Thou hadst been ruled.*
 3. Rectus erat, or fuērat, *He had been ruled.*
 P. 1. Recti ērāmus, or fuērāmus, *We had been ruled.*
 2. Recti ērātis, or fuērātis, *Ye had been ruled.*
 3. Recti ērant, or fuērant, *They had been ruled.*

FUTURE, *shall, or will be ruled.*

- S. 1. Reg-ar, *I shall, or will be ruled.*
 2. Reg-ēris, or -ēre. *Thou shalt, or wilt be ruled.*
 3. Reg-ētur, *He shall, or will be ruled.*
 P. 1. Reg-ēmur, *We shall, or will be ruled.*
 2. Reg-ēmīni, *Ye shall, or will be ruled.*
 3. Reg-entur, *They shall, or will be ruled.*

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall, or will have been ruled.*

- S. 1. Rectus fuēro, *I shall, or will have been ruled.*
 2. Rectus fuēris, *Thou shalt, or wilt have been ruled.*
 3. Rectus fuērit, *He shall or will have been ruled.*
 P. 1. Recti fuerīmus, *We shall, or will have been ruled.*
 2. Recti fuerītis, *Ye shall, or will have been ruled.*
 3. Recti fuērint, *They shall, or will have been ruled.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Lysander occisus est a Thebānis.
 Nihil actum est a Pompeio nostro sapienter.
 Vel vincam te, vel vincar abs te.
 Sternuntur inertia corpōra.
 Judex damnātur, cum nocens absolvitur.
 Præda ingens parta est.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

The judge is condemned, while the guilty is freed.
 Lysander was slain by the Thebans.
 A great booty was obtained.
 Either I will conquer thee, or be conquered by thee.
 Nothing has been done wisely by our Pompey.
 The sluggish bodies are prostrated.

LESSON XLV.

(Review Lesson XLIV.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can be ruled*.

S. 1. Reg-ar,	<i>I may, or can be ruled.</i>
2. Reg-āris, or -āre,	<i>Thou mayest, or canst be ruled.</i>
3. Reg-atur,	<i>He may, or can be ruled.</i>
P. 1. Reg-amur,	<i>We may, or can be ruled.</i>
2. Reg-āmini,	<i>Ye may, or can be ruled.</i>
3. Reg-antur,	<i>They may, or can be ruled.</i>

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should be.*

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Reg-ärer, | <i>I might, etc., be ruled.</i> |
| 2. Reg-äreris, or -ärerē, | <i>Thou mightst, etc., be ruled.</i> |
| 3. Reg-äreretur, | <i>He might, etc., be ruled.</i> |
| P. 1. Reg-äreremur, | <i>We might, etc., be ruled,</i> |
| 2. Reg-ärerēmini, | <i>Ye might, etc., be ruled.</i> |
| 3. Reg-erentur, | <i>They might, etc., be ruled.</i> |

PERFECT, *may have been.*

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Rectus sim, or fuërim, | <i>I may have been ruled.</i> |
| 2. Rectus sis, or fuëris, | <i>Thou mayest have been ruled.</i> |
| 3. Rectus sit, or fuërit, | <i>He may have been ruled.</i> |
| P. 1. Recti simus, or fuerimus, | <i>We may have been ruled.</i> |
| 2. Recti sitis, or fueritis, | <i>Ye may have been ruled.</i> |
| 3. Recti sint, or fuerint, | <i>They may have been ruled.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have been.*

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Rectus essem, or fuissem, | <i>I might, etc., have been ruled.</i> |
| Rectus esses, or fuisses, | <i>Thou mightst have ruled.</i> |
| Rectus esset, or fuisset, | <i>He might have been ruled.</i> |
| Recti essëmus, or fuissëmus, | <i>We might, etc. have been ruled.</i> |
| Recti essëtis, or fuissëtis, | <i>Ye might have been ruled.</i> |
| Recti essent, or fuissent, | <i>They might have been ruled.</i> |

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Duo Scipiönes interfecti essent.

Omnes suadent, ut exercitus instruatur.

Ut hæc gererentur.

Opes protegerentur.

Instrueretur opus.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

All advise that the army may be drawn up.

Wealth should be protected.

That these things might be carried on.

The two Scipios might have been slain.

The work should be built.

LESSON XLVI.

(Review Lesson XLV.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. Reg-ěre, or -itor,	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>
3. Reg-itor,	<i>Let him be ruled.</i>
P. 2. Reg-imīni,	<i>Be ye ruled.</i>
3. Reg-untor,	<i>Let them be ruled.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Reg-i,	<i>To be ruled.</i>
PERF.	Esse, or fuisse rectus,	<i>To have been ruled.</i>
FUT.	Rectum iri,	<i>To be about to be ruled.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Rectus, -a, -um,	<i>Having been ruled.</i>
FUT.	Regendus, -a, -um,	<i>To be ruled.</i>

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
PRES.	Regor.	Regar.	Regere.	Regi.	
IMP.	Regēbar.	Regērer.			
PERF.	Rectus sum.	Rectus sim.		Esse, or fuisse rectus.	Rectus.
PLUP.	Rectus eram.	Rectus essem.			
FUT.	Regar.			Rectum iri.	Regendus.
F. P.	Rectus fuero.				

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Et incipiunt in corpōra reverti.

Omnia tuta vides sociosque receptos.

Pater exstructos disjēcit montes.

Juba magnam partem eōrum interfīci jussit.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Juba ordered a great part of them to be slain.

You behold all things safe, and your companions brought back.

And they begin to be returned into their bodies.

The father cast down the mountains built up.

LESSON XLVII.

1. Give the *sign* of each *Tense* in all the *Moods*.
2. Name the *Roots*, and the *Tenses* formed from each.
3. Give a *Synopsis* of *both voices*, and *write tables* of them on the black-board.

LESSON XLVIII.

(Review Synopsis of the 3d Conj.)

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum, <i>To hear.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *hear, do hear.*

S. 1. Aud-io,	<i>I hear, do hear, am hearing.</i>
2. Aud-is,	<i>Thou hearest, dost hear, art hearing.</i>
3. Aud-it,	<i>He hears, does hear, is hearing.</i>
P. 1. Aud-īmus,	<i>We hear, do hear, are hearing.</i>
2. Aud-ītis,	<i>Ye hear, do hear, are hearing.</i>
3. Aud-iunt,	<i>They hear, do hear, are hearing.</i>

IMPERFECT, *heard, did hear, was hearing.*

- S. 1. Aud-iēbam, *I heard, did hear, was hearing.*
 2. Aud-iēbas, *Thou heardest, didst hear, wast hearing.*
 3. Aud-iēbat, *He heard, did hear, was hearing.*
 P. 1. Aud-iēbāmus, *We heard, did hear, were hearing.*
 2. Aud-iēbātis, *Ye heard, did hear, were hearing.*
 3. Aud-iēbant, *They heard, did hear, were hearing.*

PERF. DEF., *have heard; IND., heard, did hear.*

- S. 1. Audīv-i, *I have heard, heard, did hear.*
 2. Audīv-isti, *Thou hast heard, heardest, didst hear.*
 3. Audīv-it, *He has heard, heard, did hear.*
 P. 1. Audīv-īmus, *We have heard, heard, did hear.*
 2. Audīv-istis, *Ye have heard, heard, did hear.*
 3. Audīv-ērunt, or-ēre. *They have heard, heard, did hear.*

PLUPERFECT, *had heard.*

- S. 1. Audīv-ēram, *I had heard.*
 2. Audīv-ēras, *Thou hadst heard.*
 3. Audīv-ērat, *He had heard.*
 P. 1. Audīv-ērāmus, *We had heard.*
 2. Audīv-ērātis, *Ye had heard.*
 3. Audīv-ērant, *They had heard.*

FUTURE, *shall, or will hear.*

- S. 1. Aud-iam, *I shall, or will hear.*
 2. Aud-ies, *Thou shalt, or wilt hear.*
 3. Aud-iet, *He shall, or will hear.*
 P. 1. Aud-iēmus, *We shall, or will hear.*
 2. Aud-iētis, *Ye shall, or will hear.*
 3. Aud-ient, *They shall, or will hear.*

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall, or will have heard.*

- S. 1. Audīv-ēro, *I shall, or will have heard.*
 2. Audīv-ēris, *Thou shalt, or wilt have heard.*
 3. Audīv-ērit, *He shall, or will have heard.*
 P. 1. Audīv-erīmus, *We shall, or will have heard.*
 2. Audīv-erītis, *Ye shall, or will have heard.*
 3. Audīv-erint, *They shall, or will have heard.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Rivus progressus nostrōrum impediēbat.
 Pompeius in meam potestātem venit.
 De Pompeio scio nihil.
 De illius adventu nihil audiebāmus.
 Sævit ignobile vulgus.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Pompey came into my power.
 The ignoble rabble rages.
 The river hindered the progress of our soldiers.
 We heard nothing concerning his coming
 I know nothing concerning Pompey.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* words are the following derived?
—advent? — progress? — river? — impede? — vulgar?

LESSON XLIX.

(Review Lesson XLVIII.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can hear*.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Aud-iam, | <i>I may, or can hear.</i> |
| 2. Aud-ias, | <i>Thou mayest, or canst hear.</i> |
| 3. Aud-iat, | <i>He may, or can hear.</i> |
| P. 1. Aud-iāmus, | <i>We may, or can hear.</i> |
| 2. Aud-iātis, | <i>Ye may, or can hear.</i> |
| 3. Aud-iant, | <i>They may, or can hear.</i> |

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should.*

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| S. 1. Aud-īrem, | <i>I might, etc., hear.</i> |
| 2. Aud-īres, | <i>Thou mightst, etc., hear.</i> |
| 3. Aud-īret, | <i>He might, etc., hear.</i> |
| P. 1. Aud-īrēmus, | <i>We might, etc., hear.</i> |
| 2. Aud-īrētis, | <i>Ye might, etc., hear.</i> |
| 3. Aud-īrent, | <i>They might, etc., hear.</i> |

PERFECT, *may have heard.*

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| S. 1. Audīv-ĕrim, | <i>I may have heard.</i> |
| 2. Audīv-ĕris, | <i>Thou mayest have heard.</i> |
| 3. Audīv-ĕrit, | <i>He may have heard.</i> |
| P. 1. Audīv-erīmus, | <i>We may have heard.</i> |
| 2. Audīv-erītis, | <i>Ye may have heard.</i> |
| 3. Audīv-erint, | <i>They may have heard.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should hear.*

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| S. 1. Audīv-issem, | <i>I might, etc., have heard.</i> |
| 2. Audīv-isses, | <i>Thou mightst, etc., have heard.</i> |
| 3. Audīv-isset, | <i>He might, etc., have heard.</i> |
| P. 1. Audīv-issēmus, | <i>We might, etc., have heard.</i> |
| 2. Audīv-issētis, | <i>Ye might, etc., have heard.</i> |
| 3. Audīv-issent, | <i>They might, etc., have heard.</i> |

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Minus sæpe pecces, si scias, quid nescias.

Multa nescīrem, nisi permulta ab aliis audivissem.

Quī est, ut meæ litērae non veniant ?

Quis est, qui nesciat quid voluptas sit ?

Ciconiæ quonam e loco veniant, incompertum est.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Who is there who does not know what pleasure is?
 Thou mayest do wrong less frequently, if thou knowest
 of what thou art ignorant.

It is not known from what place the storks came.

I should be ignorant of many things, unless I had
 heard very many things from others.

Why is it, that my letters may not come.

LESSON L.

(Review Lesson XLIX.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2.	Aud-i, or -īto,	<i>Hear thou.</i>
	3. Aud-īto,	<i>Let him hear.</i>
P. 2.	Aud-īte, or -ītōte,	<i>Hear ye, or you.</i>
	3. Aud-iunto,	<i>Let them hear.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Aud-īre,	<i>To hear.</i>
PERF.	Audiv-isse,	<i>To have heard.</i>
FUT.	Esse auditūrus,	<i>To be about to hear.</i>
F. PERF.	Fuisse auditūrus,	<i>To have been about to hear.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Aud-iens,	<i>Hearing.</i>
FUT.	Aud-ītūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to hear.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Aud-ienduī,	<i>Hearing.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Aud-iendi,	<i>Of hearing.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Aud-iendo,	<i>To hearing.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Audit-um,	<i>To hear.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Audit-u.	<i>To be heard, or to hear.</i>

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunc.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Partic.</i>
PRES.	Audio.	Audiam.	Audi.	Audire.	Audi- ens.
IMP.	Audiebam.	Audirem.			
PERF.	Audivi.	Audivērim.		Audivisse.	
PLUP.	Audivēram.	Audivissem.			
FUT.	Audiam.			Esse auditūrus.	Auditū- rus.
F.P.	Audivēro.			Fuisse auditūrus.	

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Datur notas audire et reddere voces.
 Audite, O procēres, et spes discite vestras.
 Ego verò cupio ad te venire.
 Adspexit uxorem dormientem.
 Nihil eram auditūrus.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

I truly desire to come to thee.
 It is given to hear and return known voices.
 I was about to hear nothing.
 Hear, O nobles, and learn your hopes.
 He beheld his wife sleeping.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* are the following words derived?
 — *audit*? — *dormant*? — *voice*? — *known*?

LESSON LI.

(Review Lesson L.)

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Audior.	audiri.	auditus, <i>To be heard.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am heard.*

<i>S.</i> 1. Aud-ior,	<i>I am heard.</i>
2. Aud-īris, or īre,	<i>Thou art heard.</i>
3. Aud-itur,	<i>He is heard.</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Aud-īmur,	<i>We are heard.</i>
2. Aud-īmīni,	<i>Ye are heard.</i>
3. Aud-iuntur,	<i>They are heard.</i>

IMPERFECT, *was heard.*

<i>S.</i> 1. Aud-iēbar,	<i>I was heard.</i>
2. Aud-iēbāris, or iēbāre,	<i>Thou wast heard.</i>
3. Aud-iēbātur,	<i>He was heard.</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Aud-iēbāmur,	<i>We were heard.</i>
2. Aud-iēbāmīni,	<i>Ye were heard.</i>
3. Aud-iēbantur,	<i>They were heard.</i>

PERFECT, *have been heard, was heard, am heard.*

<i>S.</i> 1. Audītus sum, or fui,	<i>I have been heard.</i>
2. Audītus es, or fuisti,	<i>Thou hadst been heard.</i>
3. Audītus est, or fuit,	<i>He has been heard.</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Audīti sumus, or fuīmus,	<i>We have been heard.</i>
2. Audīti estis, or fuistis,	<i>Ye have been heard.</i>
3. Audīti sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre,	<i>They have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had been heard.*

- S. 1. Audītus ēram, or fuēram, *I had been heard.*
 2. Audītus ēras, or fuēras, *Thou hadst been heard.*
 3. Audītus ērat, or fuērat, *He had been heard.*
 P. 1. Audīti erāmus, or fuerāmus, *We had been heard.*
 2. Audīti ērātis, or fuerātis, *Ye had been heard.*
 3. Audīti ērant, or fuērant, *They had been heard.*

FUTURE, *shall, or will have been heard.*

- S. 1. Aud-iar, *I shall, or will be heard.*
 2. Aud-iēris, or -ēre, *Thou shalt, or wilt be heard.*
 3. Aud-iētur, *He shall, or will be heard.*
 P. 1. Aud-iēmur, *We shall, or will be heard.*
 2. Aud-iēmīni, *Ye shall, or will be heard.*
 3. Aud-ientur, *They shall, or will be heard.*

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall, or will have been heard.*

- S. 1. Audītus fuēro, *I shall, or will have been heard.*
 2. Audītus fuēris, *Thou shalt, or wilt have been heard.*
 3. Audītus fuērit, *He shall, or will have been heard.*
 P. 1. Audīti fuērīmus; *We shall, or will have been heard.*
 2. Audīti fuērītis, *Ye shall, or will have been heard.*
 3. Audīti fuērīnt, *They shall, or will have been heard.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Gemītus lachrymābilis ab imo audītur tumūlo.

Id oppīdum muniēbātur.

Hic ille sepultus est.

Voces audītæ sunt.

Preces homīnum piōrum a Deo audientur.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

He has been buried here.

A sad groan is heard from the lowest part of the mound

The prayers of pious men shall be heard by God.

This walled-town was fortified.

Voices have been heard.

LESSON LII.

(Review Lesson LI.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may, or can be heard.*

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| S. 1. Aud-iar, | <i>I may, or can be heard.</i> |
| 2. Aud-iāris, or -āre, | <i>Thou mayest, or canst be heard.</i> |
| 3. Aud-iātur, | <i>He may, or can be heard.</i> |
| P. 1. Aud-iāmur, | <i>We may, or can be heard.</i> |
| 2. Aud-iāmīni, | <i>Ye may, or can be heard.</i> |
| 3. Aud-iantur, | <i>They may, or can be heard.</i> |

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should be heard.*

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Aud-īrer, | <i>I might, etc., be heard.</i> |
| 2. Aud-irēris, or -irēre, | <i>Thou mightst, etc., be heard.</i> |
| 3. Aud-irētur, | <i>He might, etc., be heard.</i> |
| P. 1. Aud-irēmur, | <i>We might, etc., be heard.</i> |
| 2. Aud-irēmīni, | <i>Ye might, etc., be heard.</i> |
| 3. Aud-irentur, | <i>They might, etc., be heard.</i> |

PERFECT, *may have been heard.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| S. Audītus sim, or fuērim, | <i>I may have been heard.</i> |
| Audītus sis, or fuēris, | <i>Thou mayest have been heard.</i> |
| Audītus sit, or fuērit, | <i>He may have been heard.</i> |
| P. Audīti sīmus, or fuerīmus, | <i>We may have been heard.</i> |
| Audīti sītis, or fuerītis, | <i>Ye may have been heard.</i> |
| Audīti sint, or fuērint, | <i>They may have been heard.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Audītus essem, or fuissem, | <i>I might, etc., have been heard.</i> |
| Audītus esses, or fuisses, | <i>Thou mightst have been heard.</i> |
| Audītus esset, or fuisset, | <i>He might have been heard.</i> |
| Audīti essēmus, or fuissēmus, | <i>We might have been heard.</i> |
| Audīti essētis, or fuissētis, | <i>Ye might have been heard.</i> |
| Audīti essent, or fuissent, | <i>They might have been heard.</i> |

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Ille timuit ne opus impeditur.

Illi timuerunt ne aditus impeditur.

Justum est, ut sones puniantur.

Quum sepultus esset, cessabat omnis dolor.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

It is just that the guilty be punished.

He feared that the work might be hindered.

When he was buried, all grief ceased.

They feared that the approach might be hindered.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* words are the following derived
—*impede*? — *just*? — *punish*? — *cease*?

LESSON LIII.

(Review Lesson LII.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. Aud-ire, or itor,	<i>Be thou heard.</i>
3. Aud-itor,	<i>Let him be heard.</i>
P. 2. Aud-imini,	<i>Be ye heard.</i>
3. Aud-iuntor,	<i>Let them be heard.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Aud-iri,	<i>To be heard.</i>
PERF. Aud-itus esse, or fuisse,	<i>To have been heard.</i>
FUT. Aud-itum iri,	<i>To be about to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES

PERF. Audītus, -a, -um, *Heard, having been heard*
 FUT. Aud-iendus, -a, -um, *To be heard.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>part.</i>
PRÆS.	Audior.	Audiar.	Audire.	Audiri.	
IMP.	Audiēbar.	Audirer.			
PERF.	Auditus sum.	Auditus sim.		Esse or fuisse auditus.	Audi- tus.
PLUP.	Auditus eram.	Auditus es- sem		Auditum iri.	Audi- endus.
FUT.	Audiar.				
F. P.	Auditus fuēro.				

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Permīsit notas audiri et reddi voces.
 Fabius circumventus interficitur.
 Homo ante diem tertium ne sepelitor.
 Genērum arcessiri jussit.
 Sopitos suscitāt ignes.
 Incipit audiri fragor.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Fabius having been surrounded is slain.
 The crashing begins to be heard.
 He permitted real voices to be heard and returned.
 Let not a man be buried before the third day.
 He kindles the smothered fires.
 He ordered his son-in-law to be called.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this Exercise?

LESSON LIV.

1. Give the Sign for each Tense in all the Moods.
 2. Name the roots in *both voices*, and the Tenses formed from each.
 3. Give a Synopsis of both voices, and write *tables* of them on the *black-board*.
-

LESSON. LV.

(Review the Synopsis of 4th Conjugation.)

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

Deponent verbs are those which, under a *passive form*, have an *active* signification; as : *loquor*, I speak.

Common verbs are those which, under a *passive form*, have an *active* or *passive* signification ; as : *crimino*, I accuse, or am accused.

They are conjugated and inflected like the *passive voice* of the conjugations to which they belong ; except that they have also the *participles*, *gerunds*, *supines*, and *future infinitive* of the active voice.

NOTE. In the following exercise the pupil should refer to the *passive voice* of the conjugation he meets with, in order to parse deponent verbs understandingly.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Testātur hæc fabŭla propositum meum.
 Ubi cœpit pauper divitem imitāri peccat.
 Agrum hunc mercātus sum.
 Ille jam fatētur se esse hostem.
 Laudem merītus esse videbātur.
 Rotis summas levibus perlabitur undas.
 Consēquar jam te, mea mater.
 Dionysius classem opperiebātur.
 Tempestas cooritur.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

I have purchased this field.
 This fable proves my proposition.
 He glides along the tops of the waves with his light wheels.
 When a poor man begins to imitate the rich, he errs.
 Now I will follow thee, O my mother.
 He now confesses himself to be an enemy.
 Dionysius awaited the fleet.
 He seemed to have merited praise.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* are the following words derived?
 —*pauper*? —*merit*? —*imitate*? —*proposition*? —*testator*? —*tempest*?

LESSON LVI.

(Review Lesson LV.)

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular verbs are those in which some of the *secondary parts* are not formed from the primary, according to the *rules* for *regular verbs*.

The irregular verbs are six; viz : *sum, eo, queo, volo, fero, and fio*. Their *compounds* are also irregular.

REM. *Sum* has already been inflected. *Prosum, to do good* inserts *d* where the simple verb begins with *e*.

Prosum, prodesse, profui, To do good.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Prosum,</i>	<i>prodes,</i>	<i>prodest ;</i>
<i>Plur. Prosumus</i>	<i>prodestis,</i>	<i>prosunt.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing. Prod-eram,</i>	<i>prod-eras,</i>	<i>prod-erat ;</i>
<i>Plur. Prod-erāmus,</i>	<i>prod-erātis,</i>	<i>prod-erant.</i>

PERFECT.

<i>Sing. Profu-i,</i>	<i>profu-isti,</i>	<i>profu-it ;</i>
<i>Plur. Profu-imus,</i>	<i>profu-istis,</i>	<i>profu-erunt, or ēre.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing. Profu-eram,</i>	<i>profu-eras,</i>	<i>profu-erat ;</i>
<i>Plur. Profu-erāmus,</i>	<i>profu-erātis,</i>	<i>profu-erant.</i>

FUTURE.

<i>Sing. Prod-ero,</i>	<i>prod-eris,</i>	<i>prod-erit ;</i>
<i>Plur. Prod-erimus,</i>	<i>prod-eritis,</i>	<i>prod-erunt.</i>

F. PERFECT.

<i>Sing. Profu-ero,</i>	<i>profu-eris,</i>	<i>profu-erit ;</i>
<i>Plur. Profu-erimus,</i>	<i>profu-eritis,</i>	<i>profu-erunt.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing. Pro-sim,</i>	<i>pro-sis,</i>	<i>pro-sit ,</i>
<i>Plur. Pro-simus,</i>	<i>pro-sitis,</i>	<i>pro-sint.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>	Prod-esseim,	prod-esses,	prod-esset;
<i>Plur.</i>	Prod-essēmus,	prod-essētis,	prod-essent.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>	Profu-ërim,	profu-ëris,	profu-ërit ;
<i>Plur.</i>	Profu-erīmus,	profu-erītis,	profu-ërint.

PLUPERFECT,

<i>Sing.</i>	Profu-issem,	profu-isses,	profu-isset ;
<i>Plur.</i>	Profu-issēmus,	profu-issētis,	profu-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Prod-es, <i>or</i> prod-esto,	<i>Plur.</i>	Prod-este, <i>or</i> prod-estōte.
	3. Prod-esto,		Pro-sunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Prod-esse.	FUT.	Esse pro-futūrus, -a, -um.
PERF.	Pro-fuisse.	F. P.	Fuisse pro-futūrus, -a, -um.

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. Pro-futūrus, -a, -um.

2. Possum, posse, potui. *I can, I am able.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Possum,	potes,	potest ;
<i>Plur.</i>	Possūmus,	potestis,	possunt.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>	Pot-ëram,	pot-ëras,	pot-ërat ;
<i>Plur.</i>	Pot-ërāmus,	pot-ërātis,	pot-ërant.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Potu-i,	potu-isti,	potu-it ;
<i>Plur.</i> Potu-imus,	potu-istis,	potu-erunt, or -ere.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Potu-eram,	potu-eras,	potu-erat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Potu-erāmus,	potu-erātis,	potu-erant.

FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> Pot-ero,	pot-eris,	pot-erit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Pot-erimus,	pot-eritis,	pot-erunt.

F. PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Potu-ero,	potu-eris,	potu-erit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Potu-erimus,	potu-eritis,	potu-erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Pos-sim,	pos-sis,	pos-sit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Pos-sīmus,	pos-sītis,	pos-sint.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Pos-sem,	pos-ses,	pos-set ;
<i>Plur.</i> Pos-sēmus,	pos-sētis,	pos-sent.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Potu-erim,	potu-eris,	potu-erit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Potu-erimus,	potu-eritis,	potu-erint.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Potu-issem,	potu-isses,	potu-isset ;
<i>Plur.</i> Potu-issēmus,	potu-issētis,	potu-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRÆS. Posse. **PERF.** Potuisse. *The rest not used.*

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Jam me assēqui non potes.
 Bibūlus vim morbi sustinēre non potuit.
 Possunt, quia posse videntur.
 Cognitio juris multum prodērit.
 Auxilium dāri nulla ratiōne potērat.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

They are able, because they seem to be able.
 Now you are not able to reach me.
 Aid could be given in no manner.
 Bibulus was not able to sustain the force of disease.
 The knowledge of right shall profit much.

LESSON LVII.

(Review Lesson LVI.)

3. Eo, īre, īvi, itum. To go.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Eo,	is,	it ;
<i>Plur.</i> Imus,	itis,	eunt.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Ibam,	ibas,	ibat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Ibamus,	ibātis,	ibant.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Ivimus,	ivistis,	ivērunt, or ivēre.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Ivēram,	ivēras,	ivērat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Iverāmus,	iverātis,	ivērant.

FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ibo,	ibis,	ibit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

F. PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Ivēro,	ivēris,	ivērit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Iverimus,	iveritis	ivērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Eam,	eas,	eat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Eāmus,	eātis,	eant.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Irem,	ires,	iret ;
<i>Plur.</i> Irēmus,	irētis,	irent.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Ivērim,	ivēris,	ivērit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Iverimus,	iveritis,	ivērint.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset ;
<i>Plur.</i> Ivissēmus,	ivissētis,	ivissent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
2. I, or īto.	2. Ite, or itōte.
3. Ito ;	3. Eunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Ire.	FUT. Esse itūrus, -a, -um.
PERF. Ivisse.	F. P. Fuisse itūrus, -a, -um.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens, *Gen.* euntis. *Fut.* Itūrus, -a, -um.

GERUNDS.

SUPINES.

Eundum.

1. Itum.

Eundi, etc.

2. Itu.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Et jam Argīva phalanx ad naves ibant.
 Sed invitātus ad tuos ivisse videāris.
 Equītes ab eo missi flumen transeunt.
 Cæsar in provinciam suam ivērat.
 Cum pedes iret in hostem.
 Sed non est itūrus. Abi deambulātum.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

When the foot soldiery went against the enemy.
 But thou mayest seem to have gone, invited to
 thine own.

Cæsar had gone into his own province.
 And now the Grecian phalanx went to the ships.
 The horsemen being sent by him cross the river.
 But he is not about to go. Go out to walk.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this exercise?

LESSON LVIII.

(Review Lesson LVII.)

4. Volo, velle, volui, *To will, to be willing.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Volo,	vis,	vult;
<i>Plur.</i> Volūmus,	vultis,	volunt.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Vol-ēbam,	vol-ēbas,	vol-ēbat;
<i>Plur.</i> Vol-ēbāmus,	vol-ēbātis,	vol-ēbant.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Volu-i,	volu-isti,	volu-it;
<i>Plur.</i> Volu-imus,	volu-istis,	volu-erunt, or ēre.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Volu-eram,	volu-eras,	volu-erat;
<i>Plur.</i> Volu-erāmus,	volu-erātis,	volu-erant.

FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> Vol-am,	vol-es,	vol-et;
<i>Plur.</i> Vol-ēmus,	vol-ētis,	vol-ent.

F. PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Volu-ero,	volu-eris,	volu-erit;
<i>Plur.</i> Volu-erimus,	volu-eritis,	volu-erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Velim,	velis,	velit;
<i>Plur.</i> Velimus,	velitis,	velint.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Vellem,	velles,	vellet ;
<i>Plur.</i> Vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Volu-ërim,	volu-ëris,	volu-ërit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Volu-erīmus,	volu-erītis,	volu-erint.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Volu-issem,	volu-isses,	volu-isset ;
<i>Plur.</i> Volu-issēmus,	volu-issētis,	volu-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Velle. *Perf.* Voluisse.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. Volens.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Si quid de his rebus dicere vellet.

Quod vult habet, qui velle, quod satis est, potest.

Satis est beātus, qui potest, cum vult, mori.

Volēbam ad te Mariōnem remittere.

Hæc ad te scribere volui.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

I wished to send Mario to thee.

He has what he wishes, who is able to wish what is sufficient.

I desired to write these things to thee.

If he wished to say anything concerning these things.

He is sufficiently happy, who is able to die when he wishes.

QUESTION. What *English* words are formed from the *Latin* words in this Exercise ?

LESSON LIX.

(Review Lesson LVIII.)

5. Nolo, nolle, nolui. *To be unwilling.* (From non volo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Nolo,	nol- <i>vis</i> ,	non-vult ;
<i>Plur.</i> Nolūmus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Nol-ēbam,	nol-ēbas,	nol-ēbat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Nol-ēbāmus,	nol-ēbātis,	nol-ēbant.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Nolu-i,	nolu-isti,	nolu-it ;
<i>Plur.</i> Nolu-īmus,	nolu-istis,	nolu-ērunt, <i>or</i> -ēre.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Nolu-ēram,	nolu-ēras,	nolu-ērat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Nolu-erāmus,	nolu-erātis,	nolu-ērant.

FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> Nol-am,	nol-es,	nol-et ;
<i>Plur.</i> Nol-ēmus,	nol-ētis,	nol-ent.

F. PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Nolu-ēro,	nolu-ēris,	nolu-ērit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Nolu-erīmus,	nolu-erītis,	nolu-ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Nolim,	nolis,	nolit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Nolīmus,	nolitis,	nolint.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Nollem,	nolles,	nollet ;
<i>Plur.</i> Nollēmus,	nollētis,	nollent.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Nolu-ërim,	nolu-ëris,	nolu-ërit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Nolu-erīmus,	nolu-erītis,	nolu-ërint.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Nolu-issem,	nolu-isses,	nolu-isset ;
<i>Plur.</i> Nolu-issēmus,	nolu-issētis,	nolu-issent.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>S.</i> Noli, <i>or</i> nolīto.	<i>Pres.</i> Nolle.	<i>Pres.</i> Nolens.
<i>P.</i> Nolite, <i>or</i> nolitōte.	<i>Perf.</i> Noluisse.	<i>The rest wanting.</i>

6. Malo, malle, malui. *To be more willing.* (Magis et volo.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Malo,	mavis,	mavult ;
<i>Plur.</i> Malūmus,	mavultis,	malunt.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Mal-ëbam,	mal-ëbas,	mal-ëbat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Mal-ëbāmus,	mal-ëbātis,	mal-ëbant.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Malu-i,	malu-isti,	malu-it ;
<i>Plur.</i> Malu-īmus,	malu-istis,	malu-ërunt, <i>or</i> -ëre.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Malu-ëram,	malu-ëras,	malu-ërat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Malu-erāmus,	malu-erātis,	malu-ërant.

FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> Mal-am,	mal-es,	mal-et ;
<i>Plur.</i> Mal-ēmus,	mal-ētis,	mal-ent.

F. PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Malu-ēro,	malu-ēris,	malu-ērit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Malu-erīmus,	malu-erītis,	malu-ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Malim,	malis,	malit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Malīmus,	malītis,	malint.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Mallem,	malles,	mallet :
<i>Plur.</i> Mallemus,	mallētis,	mallent.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Malu-ērim,	malu-ēris,	malu-ērit :
<i>Plur.</i> Malu-erīmus,	malu-erītis,	malu-ērint.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Malu-issem,	malu-isses,	malu-isset ;
<i>Plur.</i> Malu-issēmus,	malu-issētis,	malu-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> Malle.	<i>PERF.</i> Maluisse.	<i>The rest not used.</i>
---------------------	------------------------	---------------------------

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Rex esse nolim, ut esse crudēlis velim.

Id cætēri facēre nolēbant.

Si ego illam nolo vendēre, coges me ?

Noli putāre, me istud maluisse.

Malim mori, quā vivēre malē.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Be unwilling to think me to have preferred that.
 The others were unwilling to do it.
 I would rather wish to die, than to live wickedly.
 If I am unwilling to sell her, will you compel me?
 I would be unwilling to be king, as I might wish
 to be cruel.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin*
 words in this exercise?

LESSON LX.

(Review Lesson LIX.)

7. Fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum. *To carry, to bring, or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fero,	fers,	fert;
<i>Plur.</i> Ferimus,	fertis,	ferunt.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Fer-ēbam,	fer-ēbas,	fer-ēbat;
<i>Plur.</i> Fer-ēbāmus,	fer-ēbātis,	fer-ēbant.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Tūl-i,	tul-isti,	tulit;
<i>Plur.</i> Tul-imus,	tul-istis,	tul-ērunt, or -ēre.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Tul-eram,	tul-eras,	tul-erat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Tul-erāmus,	tul-erātis,	tul-erant.

FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fer-am,	fer-es,	fer-et ;
<i>Plur.</i> Fer-ēmus,	fer-ētis,	fer-ent.

F. PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Tul-ero,	tul-eris,	tul-erit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Tul-erīmus,	tul-erītis,	tul-erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fer-am,	fer-as,	fer-at ;
<i>Plur.</i> Fer-āmus,	fer-ātis,	fer-ant.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Ferrem,	fer-res,	fer-ret ;
<i>Plur.</i> Fer-rēmus,	fer-rētis,	fer-rent.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Tul-erim,	tul-eris,	tul-erit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Tul-erīmus,	tul-erītis,	tul-erint.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Tul-issem,	tul-isses,	tul-isset ;
<i>Plur.</i> Tul-issēmus,	tul-issētis,	tul-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Fer, or ferto, ferto ; *Plur.* Ferte, or fertōte, feruntō

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Ferre.	FUT. Esse latūrus, -a, -um.
PERF. Tulisse.	F. P. Fuisse latūrus, -a, -um.

PARTICIPLES.	GERUNDS.	SUPINES.
PRES. Fērens.	N. Ferendum.	1. Lātum.
FUT. Latūrus, -a, -um.	G. Ferendi, &c.	2. Lātu.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Contumeliam nec ingenuus fert, nec fortis facit.

Ultro obtulērat se ignōtum.

Incerti quò fata ferant, ingrediuntur.

Timeo Danaos et dona ferentes.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

They proceed, uncertain whither the fates may bear them.

Of his own accord, he offered himself unknown (*to them.*)

I fear the Greeks even bearing gifts.

An ingenuous man does not bear contumely, nor does a brave man create it.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this Exercise?

LESSON LXI.

(Review Lesson LX.)

PASSIVE VOICE.

7. Fēror, ferri, lātus, *To be brought.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fēror,	ferris, <i>or</i> ferre,	fertur;
<i>Plur.</i> Ferimur,	ferimīni,	feruntur.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Ferēbar,	ferēbāris, <i>or</i> ferēbāre,	ferēbātur ;
<i>Plur.</i> Ferēbāmur,	ferebāmīni,	ferebantur.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Latus sum, <i>or</i> fui,	latus es, <i>or</i> fuisti, etc.
<i>Plur.</i> Lati sūmus <i>or</i> fuīmus,	lati estis, <i>or</i> fuistis, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Latus eram, <i>or</i> fuēram,	latus eras, <i>or</i> fuēras, etc.
<i>Plur.</i> Lati erāmus, <i>or</i> fuerāmus,	lati erātis, <i>or</i> fuerātis, etc.

FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ferar,	ferēris, <i>or</i> ferēre,	ferētur ;
<i>Plur.</i> Ferēmur,	feremīni,	ferentur.

F. PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Latus fuēro,	latus fuēris,	latus fuērit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Lati fuerīmus,	lati fuerītis,	lati fuērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ferar,	fer-āris, <i>or</i> fer-āre,	ferātur ;
<i>Plur.</i> Fer-āmur,	fer-āmīni,	fer-antur.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Ferrer,	ferrēris, <i>or</i> ferrēre,	ferrētur ;
<i>Plur.</i> Ferrēmur,	ferremīni,	ferrentur.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Latus sim, <i>or</i> fuērim,	latus sis, <i>or</i> fuēris, etc.
<i>Plur.</i> Lati sīmus, <i>or</i> fuerīmus,	lati sītis, <i>or</i> fuerītis, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Latus essem, <i>or</i> fuissem,	latus esses, <i>or</i> fuisses,
<i>Plur.</i> Lati essēmus, <i>or</i> fuissēmus,	lati essētis, <i>or</i> fuissētis.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Ferre, *or* fertor, fertor; *Plur.* Ferimini, feruntor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Ferri.

PERF. Latus, -a, -um.

PERF. Esse, *or* fuisse latus, -a, -um. **FUT.** Ferendus, -a, -um.

FUT. Latum iri.

REM. In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro*; as :
affēro, afferre, attūli, allatum; offēro, offerre, obtuli, oblatum;
perfēro, perferre, pertūli, perlatum.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Fascem virgulārum afferri jubet.

Simonides primus artem memoriæ protulisse fertur.

Quondam defuncti noctu efferebantur.

Partem aliquam, venti, referātis ad meas aures.

Si me restitisse dicam, non sim ferendus.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Simonides is said first to have brought out the art
of memory.

O winds! bear back some part to my ears.

He ordered a bundle of twigs to be brought.

If I should say that I resisted, I ought not to be tolerated

Formerly the dead were carried out in the night.

QUESTIONS. From what Latin words are the following derived?
—art? —part? —ear? —resist? —refer? —memory?

LESSON LXII.

(Review Lesson LXI.)

8. Fio, fieri, factus. *To be made, or done, to become,*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fio,	fis,	fit ;
<i>Plur.</i> Fimus,	fitis,	fiunt.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Fiēbam,	fiēbas,	fiēbat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Fiēbāmus,	fiēbātis,	fiēbant.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Factus sum, <i>or</i> fui,	factus es, <i>or</i> fuisti, etc.
<i>Plur.</i> Facti sūmus, <i>or</i> fuīmus,	facti estis, <i>or</i> fuistis, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Factus ēram, <i>or</i> fuēram,	factus ēras, <i>or</i> fuēras ;
<i>Plur.</i> Facti erāmus, <i>or</i> fuerāmus,	facti erātis, <i>or</i> fuerātis

FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fiam,	fies,	fiet ;
<i>Plur.</i> Fiēmus,	fiētis,	fient.

F. PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Factus fuēro,	factus fuēris, etc.
<i>Plur.</i> Facti fuerīmus,	facti fuerītis, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fiam,	fias,	fiat ;
<i>Plur.</i> Fiāmus,	fiātis,	fiant.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i> Fiērem,	fiēres,	fiēret ;
<i>Plur.</i> Fierēmus,	fierētis,	fierēnt.

PERFECT.

Sing. Factus sim, *or* fuërim, factus sis, *or* fuëris, etc.

Plur. Facti sîmus, *or* fuerîmus, facti sîtis, *or* fuerîtis, etc.

PLUPERFECT,

Factus essem, *or* fuissem, factus esses, *or* fuisses, etc.

Facti essêmus, *or* fuissêmus, facti essêtis, *or* fuissêtis, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. 2. Fi, *or* fito;
3. Fito.

Plur. 2. Fite, *or* fitôte.
3. Fiunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Fiëri.

PERF. Esse, *or* fuisse factus, -a, -um.

FUT. Factum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Factus, -a, -um.

FUT. Faciendus, -a, -um.

SUPINE.

2. Factu.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are those which are not used in some of their parts.

These three, *ôdi*, *cæpi*, and *memîni*, are used only in the perfect, and tenses derived from it.

Besides these three, the following occur most frequently : *Aio*, "I say."—*Inquam*, "I say."—*Forem*, "I should be."—*Ave*, and *salve*, "hail."

Some verbs derive the *preterit* tenses and *future perfect* from the passive form, viz : *soleo*, *solère*, *solitus sum* ; *audeo*, *audère*, *ausus sum* ; *gaudeo*, *gaudère*, *gavisus sum* ; *fio*, *fiëri*, *factus sum*.

Ausim is used instead of *ausërim*, from *audeo* ; and *fuxim* for *fecërim*, from *facio*.

Impersonal Verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal* subject or nominative.

These verbs, when translated literally into English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*; as : *delectat*, "it delights;" *decet*, "it becomes;" *contingit*, "it happens."

The *ten* following are in most common use : *decet*, *libet*, *licet*, *misēret*, *oportet*, *piget*, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *liquet*.

REM. Most Latin verbs in the passive voice may be used impersonally ; as : *pugnātur*, "it is fought," etc.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Cūm litēras ad senātum deferri placēret.

Mulier solēbat ancillas suas excitāre.

Deteriōre condiōne esse cœpērunt.

De grege non ausim quicquam deponēre.

Et hæc olim memīnisse juvābit.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

A woman was accustomed to arouse her maids.

I would not dare to take anything from the flock.

And hereafter it will delight (us) to remember these things.

They began to be in a worse condition.

When it might please that the letters should be carried to the senate.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* words are the following derived ?
—*senate* ?—*defer* ?—*please* ?—*excite* ?—*condition* ?

PART II.—SYNTAX.

LESSON LXIII.

(Review Lesson LXII.)

SYNTAX is that part of Grammar which treats of the proper arrangement and connection of words in a sentence.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

(1. In every sentence there must be a *verb* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood, and a *subject* expressed or understood.)

(2. Every *adjective*, *adjective pronoun*, or *participle* must have a *substantive* expressed or understood, with which it agrees.)

(3. Every *relative* must have an *antecedent* or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees.)

(4. Every *nominative* has its own *verb* expressed or understood, of which it is the subject, or is placed after the verb, or in apposition.)

(5. Every *verb* in the *indicative*, *subjunctive*, or *imperative mood*, has its own *nominative* expressed or understood.)

(6. Every *oblique case* is *governed* by some word expressed or understood, in the sentence of which it forms a part, or is placed under the "*construction of circumstances*.")

PARTS OF SYNTAX.

The parts of Syntax are commonly reckoned two, *Concord* or agreement, and *Government*.

Concord is the agreement of one word with another, in *gender*, *number*, *case* or *person*.

Government is that power which one word has over another in determining its *mood*, *tense*, or *case*.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

RULE I. Substantives denoting the same person or thing agree in case; as :

Cicero orātor, Cicero the orator.

(REM. 1. Substantives thus used are said to be in *apposition*.)

(REM. 2. Nouns in apposition are often connected in English by such particles as *as, being, for, etc.*; as: *Pater misit me comitem*.)

RULE II. An adjective agrees with its substantive in *gender, number, and case*; as :

Bonus vir, a good man. *Bona puella,* a good girl.

(REM. This rule applies to all *adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles*. "Substantive," in this rule, includes personal and relative pronouns.)

Obs. 1. The *substantive* is often omitted, and the adjective, assuming its gender, number, and case, is used as a substantive.

Obs. 2. These adjectives, *primus, medius, imus, summus*, etc. usually signify the *first part, middle part, lowest part, etc.*, of any thing; as: *media nox*, the *middle of the night*.

Obs. 3. Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs; as: *prior venit*, "he came first" of the two.

RULE III. The relative *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent, in *gender, number and person*; as :

Ego qui, or *quæ scribo,* I who write.

Obs. 1. The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent: *quibus quisque poterat elatis*, for (iis) *quæ quisque*, etc.

Obs. 2. The antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; as: *Urtem quam statuo vestra est*, for *Urbs quam statuo*, etc.

RULE IV. A verb agrees with its *nominative*, in *number and person*; as :

Ego lego, I read. *Vos scribītis,* Ye write.

(REM. 1. The nominative to a verb may be either a noun, a pronoun, an adjective used as a noun, the infinitive, a gerund, or a part of a sentence. *Ego, tu, nos*, and *vos*, are generally omitted.)

REM. 2. The nominative often is found with the infinitive, in which case the verb is called the *historical* infinitive.)

OBS. 1. Two or more substantives *singular* taken together, have a verb in the *plural*; taken separately, the verb is *singular*.

OBS. 2. A *collective* noun expressing many as *one whole*, has a verb in the *singular*; expressing many as *individuals*, it has a verb in the *plural*; as :

1. *Senatus venit*, the Senate came.
2. *Turba ruunt*, the crowd rush.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Consul ex mediâ morte, reservâtus est.

Carthâgo atque Corinthus, opulentissimæ urbes, ever-sæ sunt.

Omnes boni semper beâti sunt.

Multitûdo sunt sine ducibus.

Litêras expecto, quas scripsisti.

Urbem quam statuo vestra est.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Carthage and Corinth, very opulent cities, were destroyed.

I expect the letters which you wrote.

The Consul was preserved from the midst of death.

The multitude are without leaders.

The city which I build is yours.

All good (*men*) are always happy.

QUESTIONS. From what *Latin* are the following *English* words derived?—*multitude*?—*reserve*?—*opulent*?—*expect*?—*letter*?

LESSON LXIV.

(Review Lesson LXIII.)

RULE V. Any verb may have the same case after it as before it, when both words refer to the same thing ; as :

Ego sum discipŭlus, I am a scholar.

Obs. The accusative or dative before the infinitive under this rule, requires the same case after it in the predicate ; as :

Novimus te esse virum, We know that you are a man.
Mihi negligenti non esse licet. I am not allowed to be negligent.

RULE VI. One substantive governs another in the genitive, where the latter substantive limits the signification of the former ; as :

Lux naturæ, The light of nature.

(REM. This rule applies to *substantives, personal pronouns, and adjective pronouns.*

Obs. The dative is often used instead of genitives, as ;
Fratri ædes, The house of my brother,

RULE VII. A substantive added to another to express a property or quality belonging to it, is put in the genitive or ablative ; as :

Vir prudentiæ, or *prudentiæ,* A man of prudence

RULE VIII. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive ; as :

Multum pecuniæ, much money.

RULE IX. Verbal adjectives, or such as imply an operation of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avidus gloriæ, desirous of glory.

Obs. 1 Participles in *ns.* and *tus* come under this construction; as: *amans, cupiens, expertus, inexpertus*, etc.

Obs. 2. Some adjectives take the infinitive; as: *Certus ire*.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Erit inter horum laudes aliquid loci.

Castor et Pollux erant fratres.

Semper fragilitatis humanæ sis memor.

Leōnum animi index cauda est.

Catilina erat monstrum nulla virtute.

Cæsar erat vir consilii magni.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Castor and Pollux were brothers.

The tail is the index of the spirit of lions.

There will be some place among the praises of these.

Cæsar was a man of great wisdom.

Catiline was a monster of no virtue.

May you always be mindful of human frailty.

QUESTIONS From what *Latin* words are the following derived?
—index?—counsel?—virtue?—human?—monster?

LESSON LXV.

(Review Lesson LXIV.)

RULE X. *Partitives* and words placed *partitively*, *comparatives*, *superlatives*, *interrogatives*, and some *numerals* govern the *genitive plural*; as:

Quis nostrum? which of us?

Una musarum, one of the muses.

REM. 1. A *partitive* is a word which signifies a part of any number of persons or things.

REM. 2. A word placed partitively does not signify a part, but distinguishes a part from the whole ; as : *expediti militum*.

Obs. Partitives are such words as : *ullus, nullus, alter, tot*; words used partitively as in the following sentences :

Superi deorum, nemo nostrum, sancti deorum.

RULE XI. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative ; as :

Plenus iræ, or iræ, Full of anger.

RULE XII. *Sum* governs the genitive of a person or thing to which its subject belongs as a possession, property, or duty ; as :

Est regis, It belongs to the king.

Homīnis est errāre, It is the characteristic of man to err.

RULE XIII. *Misereor, miseresco, and satāgo*, govern the genitive.

Miserēre civium tuōrum, Pity your countrymen.

RULE XIV. *Recordor, meminī, reminiscor, and obliviscor*, govern the genitive or accusative ; as :

Recordor lectiōnis, or lectiōnem, I remember the lesson.

Obliviscor injuriæ, or injuriam, I forget an injury.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Erat Italia tunc plena Græcārum artium.

Illa prædicam quæ sunt consulis.

Me liceat casum miserēri amīci.

Gallōrum fortissīmi sunt Belgæ.

Bonōrum est injuriārum oblivisci.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

The Belgians are the bravest of the Gauls.

Italy was then full of Grecian arts.

May it be lawful for me to pity the calamity of a friend.

I will declare those things which belong to the consul.

It is the characteristic of the good to forget injuries.

LESSON LXVI.

(Review Lesson LXV.)

RULE XV. Substantives frequently govern the dative of their object; as:

Hostis virtutibus, An enemy to virtue.

Obs. The dative of the possessor is governed by substantives denoting the thing possessed; as:

<i>Ei venit in mentem,</i>	It came into his mind.
<i>Cui corpus porrigitur,</i>	Whose body is extended.

RULE XVI. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, govern the dative; as:

<i>Utilis bello,</i>	Useful for war.
<i>Similis patri,</i>	Like his father.

RULE XVII. All verbs govern the dative of the object or end, to which the action expressed by them is directed; as,

Finis venit imperio. An end has come to the empire.

REM. Under this general rule may be included the following *Special Rules*.

RULE I. *Sum* and its compounds govern the dative (except *possum*;) as :

Præfuit exercitui, He commanded the army.

RULE II. The verb *Est*, signifying *to be*, or *to belong to*, governs the dative of the possessor ; as :

Est mihi pater, { 1. A father is to me, i. e.
 { 2. I have a father.

RULE III. Verbs compounded of *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative ; as :

Legibus satisfācit, He satisfied the laws.

RULE IV. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *ad*, *ante*, *con*,—*in*, *inter*, *ob*,—*post*, *præ*, *sub*, and *super*, govern the dative.

RULE V. Verbs govern the dative, which signify to profit or hurt ; to favor or assist, and the contrary ; to command and obey ; to serve and resist ; to threaten and to be angry ; to trust.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Vir bonus semper patriæ decus est.

Ira insanix est simillima.

Cæsar præfuit toti provinciæ.

Sunt nobis mitia poma.

Maledixit amico suo sine causâ.

Maximum periculum consuli impendit.

Mors nulli ætati parcit.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

He reproached his friend without cause.

A good man is always an honor to his country.

Anger is very similar to insanity.

We have ripe apples. (*There are to us*, etc.)

The greatest danger overhangs the consul.

Cæsar commanded the whole province.

Death spares no age.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this Exercise ?

LESSON LXVII.

(Review Lesson LXVI.)

RULE XVIII. An impersonal verb governs the dative ; as :

Expēdit reipublicæ, It is profitable for the State.

Exc. I. *Refert* and *intērest* govern the genitive ; as :

Intērest omnium, It is the interest of all.

But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter ; as :

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

Exc. II. These five, *misēret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of the immediate, with the genitive of the remote object ; as :

Misēret me tui, I pity you.

Exc. III. *Decet, delectat, juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative with the infinitive ; as :

Delectat me studēre, It delights me to study.

RULE XIX. The verbs *sum, do, habeo*, and some others, with the dative of the *object*, govern also the dative of the *end*, or *design* ; as :

Est mihi voluptāti, { It is to me for a pleasure, i. e.,
 { It is, or brings a pleasure to me.

Obs. To this rule is sometimes referred the forms of *naming*, so common in Latin ; as : *Cui cognomen Iulo additur.*

RULE XX. A transitive verb in the active voice governs the accusative ; as :

Ama Deum, Love God.

SPECIAL RULES.

RULE I. A transitive *deponent* verb governs the accusative ; as :

Reverēre parentes, Revere your parents.

RULE II. An intransitive verb may govern a noun of kindred signification in the accusative ; as :

Pugnāre pugnam, To fight a battle.

Obs. 1. Verbs commonly intransitive are sometimes used in a transitive sense, and govern the accusative ; as :

Abhorere famam To dread fame.

Obs. 2. Many accusatives are governed by *quod attinet ad*, or *secundum*, understood, meaning, *as to, in respect of*.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Camēli diu sitim tolērant.

Neque satis tribūnis constābat, quid agērent.

Bonus puer est honōri ejus parentibus.

Ille vidētur ire longam viam.

Non decet te rixāri.

Tædet me vitæ.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

A good boy is an honor to his parents.

It does not become you to quarrel.

It was not sufficiently evident to the tribunes, what they should do.

She seemed to go a long journey.

Camels endure thirst a long time.

(It wearies me) I am weary of life.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this Exercise?

LESSON LXVIII.

(Review Lesson LXVII.)

RULE XXI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, and vocative ; as :

O formōse puer! *O* fair boy.

RULE XXII. *Opus* and *usus* signifying *need*, require the ablative ; as :

Est opus pecuniā, There is need of money.

RULE XXIII. The adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus* ; also the participles *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, denoting origin, govern the ablative ; as :

Dignus honore, Worthy of honor.
Fretus viribus, Trusting in his strength.

RULE XXIV. The comparative degree without a conjunction governs the ablative ; as :

Dulcior melle, Sweeter than honey.

Obs. *Magis* and *minus*, joined to the positive degree are equivalent to the comparative ; as : *O luce magis delecta.*

RULE XXV. Verbs of plenty and scarceness, for the most part, govern the ablative ; as :

Abundat divitiis, He abounds in riches.
Caret omni culpâ, He has no fault.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

O fallâcem hominum spem!
 O vir fortis atque amicus!
 Viris fortibus nunc opus est.
 Germania rivis fluminibusque abundat.
 Quid magis est durum auro, quid mollius aqua?
 Nihil video in Sullâ odio dignum.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

O brave man and friend!
 What is harder than gold, what softer than water?
 Now there is need of brave men.
 I see nothing in Sylla worthy of hatred.
 O deceitful hope of men!
 Germany abounds in brooks and rivers.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this exercise?

LESSON LXIX.

(Review Lesson LXVIII.)

RULE XXVI. *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative ; as :

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit.

Obs. 1. To these we may add *gaudeo, nascor, pascor, epulor*. *Potior* governs the genitive ; as : *potiri rerum* To get the chief command.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes govern the accusative. *Depasco*, and *depascor* always have the accusative.

RULE XXVII. Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting*, and *admonishing*, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing ; as :

Arguit me furti, He accuses me of theft.

RULE XXVIII. Verbs of *valuing*, with the accusative, govern such genitive as, *magni, parvi, nihili*, etc. as :

Æstimo te magni, I value you much.

REM. These genitives are adjectives, and properly agree with *pretii. momenti*, or some such noun understood.

RULE XXIX. Verbs of *comparing, giving, declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative ; as :

Compāro Virgilium Homēro, I compare Virgil to Homer.

Eripuit me morti, He rescued me from death.

Obs. Any verb may govern the accusative and dative when together with the thing done, we express also the remote object to which it is done.

RULE XXX. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching* govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing ; as :

Poscimus te pacem, We beg peace of thee.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Condemno me ipsum inertiae.
 Nunquam divitias deos rogavi.
 Brutus Tarquinio adēmit imperium.
 Tuæ litēre erunt magni.
 De his rebus utēre tuo iudicio.
 Hoc munēre functus est.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

I have never asked riches of the Gods.
 Thy letters will be of great value.
 I condemn myself for inactivity.
 He performed this office.
 Brutus took the command from Tarquinius.
 Concerning these things use your judgment.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this Exercise?

LESSON LXX.

(Review Lesson LXIX.)

RULE XXXI. Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and their contraries, govern the accusative and ablative; as :

Onērat naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Obs. several verbs denoting to *fill* likewise govern the genitive; as: *Adolescentem sua temeritatis implet.*

RULE XXXII. Verbs that govern two cases in the active voice, govern the latter of these in the passive ; as :

Accūsor furti, I am accused of theft.

Doceor grammatīcam, I am taught grammar.

RULE XXXIII. Passive verbs frequently govern the dative of the doer ; as :

Vix audior ulli, I am scarcely heard by any one.

Nulla audīta mihi sororūm, None of your sisters has been heard of by me.

Obs. The passive participle in *-dus* has the agent or doer almost always in the dative ; and generally conveys the idea of obligation or necessity ; as :

Adhibenda est nobis diligentia, Diligence must be used by us.

CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

REM. Words and phrases are by common usage *put in a particular case* in certain circumstances, without government or dependence on any words either expressed or understood. This is called the "*Construction of circumstances.*"

RULE XXXIV. *Respect wherein*, and the *part affected*, are expressed in the ablative ; as :

Jure perītus, Skilled in law.

Pædibus æger, Lame in his feet.

RULE XXXV. The *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, are put in the ablative ; as :

Palleo metu, I am pale with fear.

Fecit suo more, He did it in his own way.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

In Africā elephanti capiuntur foveis.

Crocodilus pelle durissīma munitur.

Ille omnes belli artes edoctus erat.

Pax petenda est mihi.

Aras multīs donis onērant.
 Puēri docentur grammaticam.
 Neque cernitur ulli.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

He was taught all the arts of war.
 In Africa, elephants are taken in pits.
 They load the altars with many gifts.
 Neither is he perceived by any one.
 The crocodile is protected by a very hard skin.
 Peace must be sought by me.
 The boys are taught grammar.

QUESTIONS. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this exercise ?

LESSON LXXI.

(Review Lesson LXX.)

RULE XXXVI. The name of the town denoting the place *where*, or *in which*, is put in the genitive ; as :

Vixit Romæ, He lived at Rome.

REM. But if the name of the town be of the *third declension*, or *plural number*, it is expressed in the ablative ; as :

<i>Habitat Carthagine,</i>	He dwells at Carthage.
<i>Studuit Athenis,</i>	He studied at Athens.

RULE XXXVII. The name of a town denoting the place *whither*, or *to which*, is put in the accusative : as :

Venit Romam, He came to Rome.

Obs. *At*, or *near* a place is expressed by *ad*, or *apud* with the accusative ; as :

<i>Ad, or Apud Trojam,</i>	<i>At</i> or near Troy.
----------------------------	-------------------------

XXXVIII. The name of a town *whence*, or *from which*; or *by*, or *through which*, is put in the ablative; as :

Discessit Corintho, He departed from Corinth.

RULE XXXIX. *Domus* and *rus* are construed like names of towns ; as :

Manet domi, He remains at home.

Abiit rus, He has gone to the country.

Obs. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive like names of towns.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Ego domi ero.

Si enim es Romæ, me assēqui non potes.

Is negat filium esse rure (*or* ruri.)

Non commōvi me adhuc Thessalonīcā.

Infesto exercītu Romam venit.

Spartam redire nolēbat.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

He denies that his son is in the country.

He came to Rome with a hostile army.

I shall be at home.

I have not as yet moved myself from Thessalonica.

He was unwilling to return to Sparta.

For if you remain at Rome, you will not be able to overtake me.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this Exercise ?

LESSON LXXII.

(Review Lesson LXXI.)

RULE XL. Time *when*, is put in the ablative ; as :

Venit horâ tertîâ, He came at three o'clock.

RULE XLI. Time *how long*, is put in the accusative or ablative ; as :

Mansit paucos dies, He staid a few days.

Sex mensibus abfuit, He was absent six months.

RULE XLII. *Measure* or *distance*, is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative ; as :

Murus est decem pedes altus, The wall is ten feet high.

Iter, or itinēre unius diēi, One day's journey.

RULE XLIII. The measure of *excess* or *deficiency* is put in the ablative ; as :

Sesquipēde longior, Taller by a foot and a half.

Novem pedibus minor, Less by nine feet.

RULE XLIV. The *price* of a thing is put in the ablative ; as :

Constitit talento, It cost a talent.

Vendidit hic auro patriam, This man sold his country for gold.

Exc. But *tantî, quanti, pluris, minōris*, are used in the genitive ; as :

Quanti constitit, How much cost it ?

RULE XLV. Adverbs are joined to verbs, adjectives, participles, and other adverbs, to modify and limit their signification ; as :

<i>Bene scribit,</i>	He writes well.
<i>Fortiter pugnans,</i>	Fighting bravely.
<i>Egregiè fidèlis</i>	Remarkably faithful.
<i>Satis bene,</i>	Well enough.

Obs. Two negatives, in Latin, are equivalent to an affirmative ; as : *nec non senserunt*, "nor did they not perceive ;" i. e. they did perceive. So, *nonnulli*, "not none ;" i. e. "some." *Nonnunquam*, "not never," i. e., sometimes, &c.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Isocrâtes oratiōnem viginti talentis vendidit.
 Æstâte dies sunt longiōres hiēme.
 Vixit annis novem, imperâvit triennio.
 In eo bello tres annos quæstor fuit.
 Locus est ab Româ decem millia passuum.
 Litēras tuas vehementer expecto.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

He lived nine years, he commanded three years.
 Isocrates sold an oration for twenty talents.
 I expect thy letters earnestly.
 The days are longer in summer than in winter.
 The place is ten miles from Rome.
 In that war he was quæstor three years.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this Exercise ?

LESSON LXXIII.

(Review Lesson LXXII.)

RULE XLVI. Some adverbs of *time*, *place*, and *quantity*, govern the genitive ; as :

Pridie ejus diēi, The day before that day.
Ubique gentium, Every where.
Satis est verborum, There is enough of words.

RULE XLVII. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives ; as :

Omnium optime loquitur, He speaks the best of all.
Venit obviam ei, He came to meet him.

RULE XLVIII. Twenty-eight prepositions, *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative ; as :

Ad patrem. To the father.

RULE XLIX. Fifteen prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *abs*, etc. govern the ablative ; as :

A patre, From the father.

RULE L. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, denoting *motion to*, or *tendency towards*, govern the accusative ; as :

Venit in urbem, He came into the city.

RULE LI. The prepositions *in* and *sub* denoting *situation*, govern the ablative ; *super* and *subter*, either the accusative or ablative ; as :

Jacet in terra He lies upon the ground.

Obs. 1. The preposition is frequently understood before its case: as: *Devenire locos.*

Obs. 2. Sometimes the case is omitted after the preposition: as: *Circum Concordiæ*, (understand *ædem*.)

RULE LII. A preposition in composition often governs its own case; as:

Adeamus urbem, Let us go to the city.

Exeamus urbe, Let us go out of the city.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Apud Romānos mortui plerumque cremabantur.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres.

Summus mons a Tito Labiēno tenebatur.

Camelus odium adversus equos gerit.

Dulce est pro patriā mori.

Literæ a Phœnicibus inventæ sunt.

Obviam hosti eunt consules.

Instar montis equum ædificant.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Letters were invented by the Phœnicians.

Among the Romans, the dead were generally burnt.

It is sweet to die for one's country.

They build a horse the size of a mountain.

The camel bears hatred against horses.

The consuls go to meet the enemy.

All Gaul is divided into three parts.

The top of the mountain was held by Titus Labienus.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this Exercise?

LESSON LXXIV.

RULE LIII. Any tense of the subjunctive mood may follow a tense of the *same class* in the indicative ; as :

Lego ut discam, I read that I may learn.

RULE LIV. The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam,* and *dummodo,* etc., and words used indefinitely in dependent clauses, for the most part, require the subjunctive mood ; as :

Nescit quis sim, He knows not who I am.

RULE LV. The relative *qui, quæ, quod,* requires the subjunctive, when it refers to an *indefinite, negative, or interrogative* word,—to words implying *comparison*,—or assigns the *reason, cause, or end* of that which precedes,—and also in all cases of *oblique narration*.

Obs. When the relative with its clause assigns the *cause or reason* of the action or event announced in the antecedent clause, it requires the subjunctive; as :

Peccavisse mihi videor qui a te discesserim.

REM. In all constructions of this kind, the relative is equivalent to *quum, quod, quia,* or *quoniam,* with *ego, tu, is, nos, &c.,* signifying “because,” or “seeing that I,”—“thou,”—“he,”—“we,” &c.

RULE LVI. One verb being the subject of another, is put in the infinitive ; as :

Facile est queri, To complain is easy.

Mentiri turpe est, To lie is base.

REM. The infinitive mood without a subject may be regarded as a verbal noun in the singular number, neuter gender, and in form indeclinable, and may be used as a noun in all the cases.

RULE LVII. One verb governs another, as its object, in the infinitive ; as :

Cupio discere, I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive without a subject is also used after *adjectives, participles, and nouns.*

Obs. 2. The verb governing the infinitive is sometimes omitted, when *cepit* or *ceperunt* is understood. When so used it is called the historical infinitive.

RULE LVIII. The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative ; as :

Gaudeo te valere, I am glad that you are well.

(REM. The English particle "that" may be called the sign of the accusative before the infinitive.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Percurro ad forum ut hæc tibi dicam.

Nemo felix est, qui eâ lege vivat.

Peccavisse mihi videor, qui a te discesserim.

Virgilius jussêrat carmīna sua cremâri.

Ego cupio ad te venīre.

Philippus volēbat amâri.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

I seem to myself to have (I think that I have) erred because I have left you.

Philip wished to be loved.

Virgil ordered his own poems to be burned.

I run to the forum that I may say these things to thee.

No one is happy who lives by this law.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this Exercise ?

LESSON LXXV.

(Review Lesson LXXIV.)

RULE LIX. Participles, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case ; as :

Homo carens fraude, A man wanting in guile.
Pax tantum amāta, Peace so greatly loved.

Oss. 1. Participles, gerunds, and supines, being parts of verbs, govern the cases of the verbs to which they belong.

Oss. 2. The perfect participle is used to supply the place of a verbal noun, when such a noun is wanting, or but seldom used ; as : *Hæ literæ recitatæ magnū luctum fecerunt*, "The reading of these letters (not these letters being read,) caused great mourning." *Receptus Hannibal*, "The reception of Hannibal." *Ab urbe condita*, "From the building of the city."

Oss. 3. The participle in *-dus*, generally implies the idea of *propriety, necessity, or obligation*.

RULE LX. A substantive with a participle, whose case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute ; as :

Sole oriente, fugiunt The sun rising, darkness
tenēbræ, flees away.

REM. This rule belongs to the substantive only, with which the participle then agrees by the preceding rule.

RULE LXI. The gerund, as the subject of the verb *Est*, implies necessity, and governs the dative ; as :

Legendum est mihi, Reading is to me, i. e., I must read.
Moriendum est om- Dying is to all, i. e., all must
nibus, die.

Oss. 1. The gerund is a verbal noun in the singular number (wanting the vocative,) and is construed, in all the cases, like a substantive noun ; as :

Tempus legendi, Time of reading.

Oss. 2. The gerund, as a verbal noun, resembles the infinitive, and is often put for it ; as :

Est tempus legendi, It is the time to read.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Omnibus aliquando moriendum est.
 Homo naturā est cupidus nova videndi.
 Libri sunt inutiles ignāro legendi.
 Amicus amicum semper juvābit consolando.
 Exempla fortunæ variantis sunt innumēra.
 Sabīnis debellātis, Tarquinius rediit.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

Examples of changing fortune are innumerable.
 All must, at length, die
 Books are useless to one ignorant of reading.
 The Sabines having been subdued, Tarquin returned.
 Man is, by nature, desirous of seeing new things.
 A friend will always assist a friend by consoling him.

LESSON LXXVI.

(Review Lesson LXXV.)

RULE LXII. *Gerunds* governing the accusative, are elegantly turned into *gerundives* in *-dus*, which, with the sense of the gerund, instead of *governing*, agree with their substantives, in gender, number, and case ; as ;

Gerund : *Tempus petendi pacem*, { Time of seeking peace.
 Gerundive : *Tempus petendæ pacis*, {

RULE LXIII. The supine in *-um* is put after a verb of motion : as :

Abiit deambulātum, He hath gone to walk.

RULE LXIV. The Supine in *-u* is put after an adjective noun ; as :

Facile dictu, Easy to tell, or to be told.

REM. The supines being nothing but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, and only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood ; they may be translated as infinitives ; as : *difficile cognitū, or cognosci.*

RULE LXV. The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel,* and some others, couple similar cases and moods ; as :

Honōra patrem et matrem, Honor father and mother.
Nec legit nec scribit, He neither reads nor writes.

EXERCISE.

LATIN TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Inītum est consilium urbis delendæ.
Rogātum auxilium Romam legātos mittunt.
Res est visu fœda, et auditu.
Ea vidēre ac perspicēre potestis.
Pater et filius sunt scelesti.

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

The father and son are wicked.
 They entered upon the design of destroying the city.
 The thing is loathsome to be seen, and to be heard.
 You are able to see and to discern these things.
 They send ambassadors to Rome, to ask aid.

QUESTION. What *English* words are derived from the *Latin* words in this exercise ?

N. B. When the pupil has proceeded thus far, let him return and review *thoroughly*, but rapidly, from the beginning.

When he commences the history of Joseph, after the general review, he should begin with Bullions' Latin Grammar, or with whatever text-book the teacher adopts.

THE HISTORY OF JOSEPH, FROM L'HOMOND'S HISTORIA SACRA.

(IN arranging the words of each sentence in the proper order for translation into English, let the pupil carefully follow the "DIRECTIONS FOR BEGINNERS," in Bullions' Latin Grammar, § 52, p. 270. — He will be greatly assisted in preparing his lessons, by examining the references to the same Grammar at the foot of each page. — Where the reference is to a Rule of Syntax only, it will also be found, by its number, in the preceding Lessons. — The pupil should carefully analyse each sentence, and parse the words it contains. — See §§ 152, 153.)

1. JOSEPH'S INFANCY.

Jacōbus habuit duodēcim filios, inter quos erat Josēphus : hunc pater amābat ^a præ cætēris ^b quia senex ^c genuerat ^d eum. Dedērat illi ^e togam textam è filis ^f varii colōris. ^g

Quam ob causam Josēphus erat invīsus suis fratrībus, ^h præsertim post quā narravisset eis ^e duplex somnium, quo ⁱ futūra ejus magnitūdo portendebātur.

Odērant ^j illum tantopēre ut non possent ^k cum eo amicē loqui.

^a § 44, II, 1.

^b § 136, R. XLIX.

^c § 98, Obs. 10.

^d *gigno*.

^e § 123 R. XXIX.

^f § 128 Obs. 2.

^g § 106 R. VII.

^h § 126 R. XXXIII.

ⁱ § 129 R. XXXV.

^j § 84 Obs. 2.

^k § 140 1, 1st.

2. JOSEPH'S DREAM.

Hæc proro erant Josēphi^a somnia. “^b Ligabāmus,”^c inquit, “simul manipūlos in agro : ecce manipūlus “ meus surgēbat et stabat rectus ;^d vestri autem mani-
“ pūli circumstantes venerabantur meum.”

“ Postea vidi^e in somnis solem ; lunam et undēcim
“ stellas adorantes me.”

Cui^f fratres respondērunt : “ Quorsūm spectant ista^g
somnia ? “ nūm tu eris rex^h noster ? num subjiciēmur
“ ditiōni^h tuæ ? ” Fratres igītur invidēbant ei ;ⁱ et
pater rem tacītus^d considerābat.

3. JOSEPH'S BRETHREN RESOLVE TO KILL HIM.

Quādam die^j quum fratres Josēphi pascērent^k greges
procul, ipse remansērat domi.^l Jacōbus misit eum ad
fratres, ut sciret^m quomōdo se habērent.ⁿ

Qui videntes Josēphum venientem, consilium cepē-
runt illius occidendi :^o “ Ecce,” inquiēbant, “ somniā-
“ tor venit : occidāmus^p illum, et projiciāmus^p in
“ puteum : dicēmus patri :^f fera devorāvit Josēphum.
“ Tunc apparēbit^q quid sua illi^r prosint somnia.”

4. REUBEN, THE ELDEST, TRIES TO SAVE HIM.

Reuben, qui erat natu^s maximus, deterrēbat^t fratres
a tanto scelēre.

^a § 106, R. VI.

^b § 103, R. V.

^c § 44, II.

^d § 98, Obs. 10.

^e § 44, III, *Indef.*

^f § 123, R. XXIX, O2.

^g § 28, Obs. 3, 3d.

^h § 126, R. III.

ⁱ § 112, R. V.

^j § 131, R. XL.

^k § 140, Obs. 4.

^l § 130, R. XXXIX.

^m § 140, R. LIV.

ⁿ § 140, 4.

^o § 147, R. LXII.

^p § 45, I, 1.

^q § 85, 2.

^r § 112, R. 1.

^s § 128, R. Exp.

^t § 26, 6, *Note.*

^u § 44, II, 2.

“Nolite,” inquit, “interficere puerum : est enim frater ^a noster : dimittite eum potius in hanc foveam.”

Habebat in animo liberare ^b Josēphum ex eorum ^c manibus, et ^d illum extrahere è foveâ, atque ^d ad patrem reducere.

Reipsâ his verbis ^e deducti ^f sunt ad mitius consilium.

5. JOSEPH SOLD BY HIS BRETHREN TO MERCHANTS.

Ubi Josēphus pervēnit ad fratres suos, detraxerunt ei ^g togam, quâ ^h indūsus erat, et ^d detrusērunt eum in foveam.

Deinde quum consedissent ⁱ ad sumendum ^j cibum conspexerunt mercatores qui petēbant ^k Ægyptum ^l cum camēlis portantibus varia aromata. ^m

Venit ⁿ illis ^o in mentem Josēphum vendere iis mercatoribus. ^p

Qui emērunt Josēphum viginti nummis ^p argenteis, eumque duxerunt in Ægyptum.

6. THEY SEND TO THEIR FATHER, JOSEPH'S ROBE STAINED WITH BLOOD.

Tunc fratres Josēphi tinxerunt togam ejus in sanguine hœdi quem occiderant, et ^d misērunt eam ^e ad

^a § 103, R. V.	^f § 44, III, 5 Note.	^l § 130, Obs. 10
^b § 144, R. LVII.	^g § 123, R. XXIX.	^m § 146 <i>Rem.</i>
^c § 28, Obs. 3, 3d and	^h § 126, R. V.	ⁿ § 85, 2.
§ 106, R. VI.	ⁱ § 140, Obs. 4.	^o § 110, Obs. 1.
^d § 149, R. LXV.	^j § 147, R. LXII.	^p § 133, R. XLIV.
^e § 129, R. XXXV.	^k § 44, II.	

patrem cum his verbis : "Invenimus^a hanc togam ;
" vide an toga filii tui sit."^b

Quam quum agnovisset^c pater, exclamāvit : " Toga
" filii mei est : fera pessīma devorāvit^a Josēphum."
Deindē scidit^d vestem, et^e induit cilicium.

Omnes filii ejus convenērunt ut lenīrent^f dolōrem
patris ; sed Jacōbus noluit accipere^g consolatiōnem,
dixitque ; " Ego descendam mœrens cum filio meo in
sepulcrum. "

7. POTIPHAR PURCHASES JOSEPH.

Putīphar Ægyptius emit Josēphum à mercatoribus.

Deus autem favit Putiphāri^h causāⁱ Josēphi : om-
nia^j ei^k prospere succedēbant.

Quam ob rem Josēphus benignē habitus est ab hero,^l
qui præfēcit eum domui^m suæ.

Josēphus ergo administrābat rem familiārem Puti-
phāris, omnia^j fiēbantⁿ ad nutum ejus, nec Putīphar
ullius negotii curam gerēbat.

8. JOSEPH, ACCUSED BY POTIPHAR'S WIFE, IS CAST INTO PRISON.

Josēphus erat insigni et pulchrā facie^o uxor Puti-
phāris eum pelliciēbat^p ad flagitium.

Josēphus autem nolēbat assentiri imprōbæ muliēri.^k

^a § 44, III *Def.*

^q § 140, 4.

^c § 140, Obs. 4.

^d § 144, III *Indef.*

^e § 149, R. LXV.

^f § 140, R. LIV.

^g § 144, R. LVII.

^h § 112, R. V.

ⁱ § 129, R. XXXV.

^j § 98, Obs. 5.

^k § 112, R. IV.

^l § 126, Obs. 2.

^m § 123 R. XXIX.

ⁿ § 83, Obs. 3.

^o § 106, R. VII.

^p § 44, II, 1.

Quādam die ^a mulier apprehendit oram pallii ejus, at Josēphus reliquit pallium in manibus ejus, et ^b fugit.

Mulier irāta inclamāvit servos, ^c et Josēphum accusāvit apud virum, qui nimium credūlus conjecit Josēphum in carcērem.

9. THE DREAMS OF PHARAOH'S OFFICERS.

Erant in eōdem carcēre duo ministri Regis Pharaōnis; alter ^d præerat pincernis, ^e alter ^d pistoribus.

Utrique ^f obvēnit divinitus somnium eādem nocte. ^a

Ad quos quum venisset ^g Josēphus manē, et ^b animadvertisset eos tristiōres solito interrogāvit quānam esset ^h mœstitiæ causa? ⁱ

Qui ^j respondērunt: "Obvēnit nobis ^f somnium, nec quisquam est qui illud nobis ^k interpretētur." ^l

"Nonne," inquit Josēphus: "Dei ^m solius ⁿ est prænoscere ^o res futūras? narrāte mihi ^k somnia vestra.

10. JOSEPH EXPLAINS THE CHIEF CUPBEARER'S DREAM.

Tum prior sic exposuit Josēpho ^k somnium suum:

"Vidi ^p in quiete vitem in quā erant tres palmītes.

"ea paulatim protulit gemmas; deinde flores erupērunt,

"ac denique uvæ maturescēbant." ^q

"Ego exprimēbam ^r uvas in scyphum Pharaōnis, eiūque ^k porrigēbam."

^a § 131, R. XL.

^b § 149, R. LXV.

^c § 116, Obs. 4. 2d.

^d § 98, Obs. 12.

^e § 112, R. I.

^f § 112, R. IV.

^g § 140, Obs. 4.

^h § 140, 5.

ⁱ § 103, R. V.

^j § 99, R. III.

^k § 123, R. XXIX.

^l § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1.

^m § 108, R. XII.

ⁿ § 20, 4.

^o § 144, R. LVI.

^p § 44, III. *Indef.*

^q § 88, 2.

^r § 44, II. 1.

“Esto bono animo,”^a inquit Josēphus; “post tres dies Pharaō te restituet in gradum pristinum: te^b rogo ut meminēris^c mei.”^d

11. HE EXPLAINS THE CHIEF BUTLER'S DREAM.

Alter quoque narrāvit somnium suum Josēpho: “Gestābam^f in capite tria canistra in quibus erant cibi quos pistōres solent conficere.”

“Ecce autem aves circumvolitābant,^f et cibos illos comedēbant.” Cui^e Josēphus: “Hæc est interpretatio^g istius^h somnii: tria canistra suntⁱ tres dies,^g quibus^j elapsis, Pharaō te feriet secūri,^k et affiget ad palum, ubi aves pascentur carne^l tuâ.”

12. THE ACCOMPLISHMENT OF THE TWO DREAMS.

Die^m tertio, qui dies natālis Pharaōnis erat, splendīdum convivium parātumⁿ fuit.

Tunc rex meminit ministrōrum^e suōrum, qui erant in carcēre.

Restituit^o præfecto^e pincernārum munus suum, altērum vero secūri^k percussus suspendit^o ad palum. Ita res somnium comprobāvit.^o

Tamen præfectus pincernārum oblitus est Josēphi,^e nec illius^p in se meriti^e recordātus est.^q

^a § 106, R. VII.

^b § 124, R. XXX and ^c § 103, R. V.

^d § 116, Exp.

^e § 140, 1, 3d.

^f § 108, R. XIV.

^g § 123, R. XXIX.

^f § 44, II. 1.

^h § 31, Obs. 2.

ⁱ represent.

^j § 146, R. LX.

^k § 15, 5.

^l § 14, 5, & § 121, O. 2

^m § 131, R. XL.

ⁿ § 44, Note. *Indef.*

^o § 44, III. *Indef.*

^p § 106, R. VI

^q § 72, 1.

13. THE DREAMS OF KING PHARAOH.

Post biennium rex ipse^a habuit somnium. Videbatur sibi^b adstare Nilo^c flumini: et ecce emergēbant de flumine septem vaccæ pingues, quæ pascebantur in palūde. Deinde septem aliæ vaccæ macilentæ exierunt ex eodem flumine, quæ devorârunt priores.^d

Pharao expectatus rursum dormiuit, et alterum^e habuit somnium. Septem spicæ plenæ enascebantur in uno culmo, aliæque totidem exiles succrescebant, et spicas plenas consumēbant.

14. THE CHIEF CUPBEARER MENTIONS JOSEPH TO THE KING.

Ubi illuxit,^f Pharao perturbātus convocāvit omnes conjectōres Ægypti, et narrāvit illis^g somnium; at, nemo potērat illud interpretāri.

Tunc præfectus pincernarum dixit Regi:^h “Confiteor peccātum meum; quum ego et præfectus pistorum essēmusⁱ in carcēre, uterque^j somniavimus eādē nocte.^k

Erat ibi puer Hebræus, qui nobis^l sapienter interpretātus est somnia; res enim interpretatiōnem comprobāvit.

15. JOSEPH EXPLAINS THE KING'S DREAM.

Rex accessit Josēphum, eique^m narrāvit utrumque somnium. Tum Josēphus Pharaōni:ⁿ “duplex,” inquit, “somnia unam atque eandem rem significat.”

^a § 32.^b *he seemed to himself.*^c § 112, R. IV.^d § 98, Obs. 5.^e § 24, 7.^f § 85, 5.^g § 123, R. XXIX.^h § 123, Obs. 2.ⁱ § 140, Obs. 4. and

§ 102, Obs. 3.

^j § 98, Exc. 4.^k § 131, R. XL.

“Septem vaccæ pingues et septem spicæ plenæ sunt
 “septem anni ^a ubertätis ^b mox ventūræ; septem vero
 “vaccæ macilentæ, et septem spicæ exiles sunt totidem
 “anni famis quæ ubertatem ^c secutūra est.” ^d

“Itaque, Rex, præfice toti ^e Ægypto ^f virum sapien-
 “tem et industrium, qui partem frugum ^b recondat ^g
 “in horreis publicis, servetque ^h diligenter in subsidi-
 “um famis ^b secutūræ.”

16. JOSEPH IS MADE GOVERNOR OF ALL EGYPT.

Regi ⁱ placuit consilium: quare dixit Josêpho: ^j
 “Num quisquam est in Ægypto te ^k sapientior? nemo
 “certè fungêtur melius illo munère.” ^l

“En tibi ^f trado curam regni mei.”

Tum detraxit e manu suâ annulum, et Josêphi digi-
 to ^f inseruit: induit illum veste ^m byssinâ: collo ^f tor-
 quem aureum circumdedit, eumque in curru suo secun-
 dum collocavit.

Josêphus erat triginta annos ⁿ natus, quum ^o sum-
 mam potestatem a Rege accēpit. ^o

17. JOSEPH RESERVES PART OF THE GRAIN, WHICH HE AFTERWARDS SELLS.

Josêphus perlustravit omnes Ægypti regiões et per
 septem annos ^p ubertätis ^b congregit ^q maximam fru-
 menti copiam.

Secuta est inopia septem annorum, ^r et in orbe uni-
 verso fames ingravescēbat. ^s

^a § 103, R. V.

^b § 106, R. VI.

^c § 116, R. I.

^d § 79, 8.

^e § 20, 4.

^f § 123, R. XXIX.

^g § 141, R. II, 4th.

^h § 149, R. LXV.

ⁱ § 112, R. V.

^j § 123, Obs. 2.

^k § 120, R. XXIV.

^l § 121, R. XXVI.

^m § 125, R. XXXI.

ⁿ § 131, R. XLI.

^o § 140, Obs. 3.

^p § 131, Obs. 1.

^q § 44, III, *Indef.*

^r § 106, R. VII

^s § 88, 2.

Tunc Ægyptii, quos ^a premēbat egestas, adiērunt Regem ^b postulantē cibum.

Quos Pharao remittēbat ad Josēphum. Hic autem aperuit horrea, et Ægyptiis ^c frumenta vendidit. ^d

18. JACOB SENDS HIS SONS INTO EGYPT, RETAINING ONLY BENJAMIN WITH HIM.

Ex aliis quoque regionibus conveniebatur ^e in Ægyptum ad emendam ^f annōnam.

Eādē necessitatē ^g compulsus Jacōbus, misit illuc filios suos.

Itaque profecti sunt fratres Josēphi; sed pater retinuit domi ^h natu minimum, ⁱ qui vocabatur Benjamīnus. ^j

Timēbat enim ne ^k quid mali ^l ei ^m accidēret in itinēre.

Benjamīnus ex eādē matre ⁿ natus erat quā ^o Josēphus, ideōque ei ^p longē carior erat quā cætēri fratres. ^q

19. JOSEPH PRETENDS TO TAKE HIS BROTHERS FOR SPIES.

Decem fratres, ubi in conspectum Josēphi venērunt, eum proni ^r venerāti sunt.

Agnovit eos Josēphus, nec ipse est cognitus ab eis. ^s

Noluit indicāre statim quis esset; ^t sed eos ^u interrogāvit tanquam aliēnos; "Unde venistis et quo consilio?" ^v

^a § 99, R. III.

^b § 136, R. LII.

^c § 123, R. XXIX.

^d § 44, III. *Indef.*

^e § 85, 6, *ab hominibus.*

^f § 147, R. LXII.

^g § 129, R. XXXV.

^h § 130, R. XXXIX.

ⁱ § 26, 6, *Note.*

^j § 103, R. V.

^k § 140, Obs. 6.

^l § 106, R. VIII.

^m § 112, R. IV.

ⁿ § 119, *Exp.*

^o § 119, R. XXIII.

^p § 111, R. XVI.

^q § 120, Obs. 1.

^r § 98, Obs. 10.

^s § 126, Obs. 2.

^t § 140, 5.

^u § 124, R. XXX.

Qui respondērunt: "Profecti^a sumus e regiōne
"Chanaan, ut emāmus^b frumentum."

"Non est^c ita," inquit Josēphus; "sed venistis huc
"anīmo^d hostili; vultis explorāre nostras urbes et loca
"Ægypti parum munīta."

At illi: "Minīmè," inquiunt: "nihil mali^e medi-
- "tāmur: duodēcim fratres^f sumus; minimus^g reten-
"tus est domi^h a patre: alius verò non supērest."

20. JOSEPH DETAINS SIMEON UNTIL THEY BRING BEN- JAMIN TO HIM.

Illud Josēphum angēbat, quòd Benjāminus cum
cætēris non adērat.ⁱ

Quare dixit eis:^j "Experiar an verum dixeritis:^k
"maneat^l unus ex vobis^m obsesⁿ apud me, dum addu-
"cātur^o huc frater vester minimus; cætēri,^p abīte
"cum frumento."

Tunc cōpērunt inter se^q dicere: "Merīto hæc pa-
"tīmur: crudēles^r fuīmus in fratrem nostrum; nunc
"pœnam hujus scelēris luīmus."

Putābant hæc verba^s non intellīgi a Josēpho;^t qui
per interprētem cum eis loquebātur.

Ipse autem avertit se parumper, et flevit.

21. THE BROTHERS OF JOSEPH RETURN.

Josēphus jussit fratrum saccos^u implēri tritico,^v et

^a § 44, III, *Note*.

^b § 140, R. LIV, 1.

^c § 85, 2.

^d § 129, R. XXXV.

^e § 106, R. VI.

^f § 103, R. V.

^g § 26, 6, *Note*.

^h § 130, R. XXXIX.

ⁱ *Adsum*.

^j § 123, R. XXIX.

^k § 140, 5.

^l § 45, I, 1.

^m § 107, Obs. 8.

ⁿ § 97, R. I. *Exp*.

^o § 140, 4.

^p § 107, R. X. *Sup.*
vestrum.

^q § 28, Obs. 5.

^r § 103, Obs. 2.

^s § 145, R. LVIII

^t § 126, Obs. 2.

^u § 126, R. V.

pecuniam^a quam attulērant repōni in ore saccōrum : addīdit insūper cibaria in viam.

Deinde dimisit eos, præter Simeōnem, quem retinuit obsīdem.^b

Itaque profecti sunt fratres Josēphi, et quum venissent^c ad patrem, narravērunt ei^d omnia^e quæ sibi^f accidērunt.

Quum aperuissent^g saccos, ut effundērent^h frumenta, mirantes reperērunt pecuniam.

22. JACOB WILL NOT LET BENJAMIN DEPART.

Jacōbus, ut audīvit Benjamīnum^a arcessi a Præfeco Ægypti, cum gemītu questus est.

“Orbum me libēris^b fecistis; Josēphus mortuus est; “Simeon retentus est in Ægypto; Benjamīnum, vultis abducere.”ⁱ

“Hæc omnia mala^c in me recīdunt; non dimittam “Benjaminum: nam si quid ei^f adversi^j accidērit^k in “viâ, non potēro ei^l superstes vivēre, et dolōre^m oppressus moriar.”

23. HIS SONS PRESS HIM TO CONSENT.

Postquam consumpti sunt cibi quos attulērant, Jacōbus dixit filiis^d suis: “Proficiscimīni itērum in Ægyptum,^a ut emātis^e cibos.”

Qui respondērunt: “Non possūmus adīre Præfeco^g Ægypti sine Benjamīno: ipse enim jussit illum^a ad se addūci.”

^a § 145, R. LVIII.

^b § 97, R. I Exp.

^c § 140, Obs. 4.

^d § 123, R. XXIX.

^e § 98, Obs. 5.

^f § 112, R. IV.

^g § 140, R. LIV, 1.

^h § 107, R. IX.

ⁱ § 144, R. LVII.

^j § 106, R. VIII.

^k § 140, 2.

^l § 111, R. XVI.

^m § 129, R. XXXV.

ⁿ § 136, R. L.

^o § 136, R. LII.

"Cur," inquit pater, "mentiōnem fecistis de fratre vestro minūmo?"

"Ipse," inquiunt, nos interrogāvit an pater vivēret, "an alium fratrem haberēmus." Respondimus ad ea "quæ sciscitabātur: non potuimus præscire^b eum^c "dictūrum esse: adducite huc fratrem vestrūm."

24. JACOB AT LAST CONSENTS.

Tunc Judas unus e filiis^d Jacōbi, dixit patri: "Com-mitte mihi^f puērū: ego illum recipio in fidem meam: ego servābo, ego redūcam illum ad te; nisi fecēro, hujus rei culpa in me residēbit; si voluisses^e eum statim dimittere, jam secundo huc rediissēmus." Tandem victus pater annuit: "Quoniam necesse est," inquit, "proficiscātur^h Benjamīnus vobiscum;ⁱ deferte viro munēra et duplum pretium, ne fortē errōre^j factum sit,^k ut vobis^l redderētur^m prior pecunia."

25. JOSEPH PREPARES A FEAST FOR HIS BRETHREN.

Nunciātum est Josēpho^l eosdem viros^e advenisse, et cum eis parvūlum fratrem.^c

Jussit Josēphus eos^e introdūci domum,ⁿ et lautum parāri convivium.^c

Illi porro metuēbant ne^o arguerentur de pecuniā,^p quam in saccis reperērant: quare purgavērunt se apud dispensatōrem Josēphi.

^a § 140, 5.

^b § 144, R. LVII.

^c § 145, R. LVIII.

^d § 107, Obs. 8.

^e § 123, Obs. 2.

^f § 123, R. XXIX.

^g § 140, 2.

^h § 45, I, 1.

ⁱ § 28, Obs. 4.

^j § 129, R. XXXV.

^k § 140, R. LIV, 1.

^l § 126, R. III.

^m § 140, I, 4th.

ⁿ § 136, R. LII.

^o § 140, Obs. 6.

^p § 122, Obs. 1.

“Jam semel,” inquiunt, “huc venimus; reversi domum invenimus pretium frumenti in saccis: nescimus quonam casu id factum fuerit;^a sed eandem pecuniam reportavimus.”

Quibus^b dispensator ait: “Bono animo^c estote.” Deinde adduxit ad illos Simeonem, qui retentus fuerat.

26. THEY ARE ADMITTED INTO JOSEPH'S PRESENCE.

Deinde Josēphus ingressus est in conclāve,^d ubi sui eum fratres expectābant, qui eum venerāti sunt offerentes ei munera.

Josēphus eos clementer salutāvit, interrogavitque; “Salvusne^e est senex ille quem vos patrem habētis? “Vivitne adhuc?”

“Qui respondērunt: “Salvus^e est pater noster, adhuc vivit.”

Josēphus autem, conjectis in Benjaminum oculis,^f dixit: “iste^g est frater^h vester minimus, qui domiⁱ remanserat apud patrem?” et rursus: “Deus sit^j tibi^k propitius, fili mi:”^l et abiit festinans,^m quia commotus erat animo,ⁿ et lacrymæ erumpēbant.^o

27. JOSEPH CAUSES HIS SILVER CUP TO BE PUT INTO BENJAMIN'S SACK.

Josēphus lotā facie^f regressus, continuit se, et^p jussit appōni cibos.^q Tum distribuit escam unicuique^b

^a § 140, 5.

^b § 123, R. XXIX.

^c § 107, R. VII.

^d § 136, R. L.

^e § 103, R. V, Obs. 2.

^f § 146, R. LX.

^g § 31, Obs. 2.

^h § 103, R. V.

ⁱ § 130, 4.

^j § 45, I, 1.

^k § 111, R. XVI.

^l § 30, Obs. 2.

^m § 146, Obs. 6.

ⁿ § 128, R. XXXIV.

^o § 44, II.

^p § 149, R. LXV.

^q § 145, R. LVIII.

fratrum^a suorum; sed pars Benjamīni erat quintuplo māior quam cæterorum.^b Peracto convivio,^c Josēphus dat negotium dispensatōri,^d ut saccos eorum impleat^e frumento,^f pecuniam simul repōnat,^e et insuper scyphum suum argenteum in sacco Benjamīni recondat.^g

Ille fecit diligenter quod^g jussus fuērat.

28. JOSEPH SENDS IN PURSUIT OF THEM.

Fratres Josēphi sese in viam dedērant, necdum procul ab urbe^h abērant.

Tunc Josēphus vocāvit dispensatōrem domūs suæ, eīque dixit: "Persequere viros, et quum eos assecutus fuēris,ⁱ illis^d dicito: Quare injuriam pro beneficio "repēdistis?"

"Subripuistis scyphum argenteum, quo^j domīnus "meus utitur: imprōbē fecistis."

Dispensator mandata Josēphi perfecit; ad eos confestim advolāvit; furtum exprobāvit, rei indignitatem exposuit.

29. THE CUP IS FOUND IN BENJAMIN'S SACK.

Fratres Josēphi respondērunt dispensatōri;^d "Istud "scelēris^k longē a nobis aliēnum est: nos, ut tute "scis, retulimus bonā fide^l pecuniam repertam in sac- "cis; tantum abest ut furātī simus^m scyphum domīni "tui: apud quem furtum deprehensum fuērit,ⁿ is "morte^l mulctētur."^o

^a § 107, R. X.

^b § 120, Obs. 1.

^c § 146, R. LX.

^d § 123, R. XXIX.

^e § 140, 1, 3d.

^f § 125, R. XXXI.

^g § 99, Obs. 1, 4th.

^h § 136, Obs. 7.

ⁱ § 140, Obs. 3.

^j § 121, R. XXVI.

^k § 106, R. VIII.

^l § 129, R. XXXV.

^m § 140, 1, 4th.

ⁿ § 140, 5.

^o § 45, 1, 1.

Continuò depōnunt saccos et aperiunt, quos ille scrutātus, invēnit scyphum in sacco Benjamīni.

30. THEY RETURN TO THE CITY OVERPOWERED WITH SORROW.

Tunc fratres Josēphi mœrōre^a oppressi revertuntur in urbem.

Adducti ad Josēphum, sese abjecērunt ad pedes illius. Quibus^b ille : “Quomōdo,” inquit, “potuistis “hoc scelus admittēre.”

Judas respondit : “Fateor ; res est manifesta ; nullo^c lam possumus excusatiōnem afferre, nec audēmus^c “petēre veniam aut sperāre ; nos omnes erīmus servi^d “tui.”

“Nequaquam,” ait Josēphus ; “sed ille, apud quem “inventus est scyphus, erit mihi^e servus : autem abīte “libēri ad patrem vestrum.”

31. JUDAH OFFERS HIMSELF INTO SLAVERY INSTEAD OF BENJAMIN.

Tunc Jūdas accēdens propiūs ad Josēphum : “Te^f “oro,” inquit, “Domīne mi, § ut bonā cum veniā me “audias :^h pater unīce dilīgit puērū : nolēbat primò “eum dimittēre ; non potui idⁱ ab eo impetrāre, nisi “postquam spopondi eum^j tutum ab omni pericūlo fore ; si redierīmus^k ad patrem sine puēro, ille mœrōre “confectus moriētur.”

“Te^f oro atque obsēcro, ut sinas^h puērū abīre

^a § 129, R. XXXV.

^b § 123, Obs. 2.

^c § 78, 1.

^d § 103, R. V.

^e § 110, Obs. 1.

^f § 124, R. XXX.

^g § 30, Obs. 2.

^h § 140, 1, 3d.

ⁱ § 98, Obs. 7.

^j § 145, R. LVIII.

^k § 140, 2.

“meque pro eo addīcas in servitūtem : ego pœnam,
“quā^a dignus est, mihi sumo et exsolvam.”

32. JOSEPH MAKES HIMSELF KNOWN TO HIS BRETHREN.

Interea Josēphus continēre se^b vix potērat : quare
jussit Ægyptios^c adstantes recedēre.

— Tum flens dixit magnā voce :^d “Ego sum Josēphus ;^e
“vivitne adhuc pater meus ?”

Non potērant respondēre fratres ejus nimio timōre^d
perturbāti.

Quibus^f ille amīcē : “Accedīte,” inquit, “ad me ;
“ego sum Josēphus frater^g vester, quem vendidistis
“mercātorībus^h euntibus in Ægyptum : nolīte timēre ;
“Dei providentiā^d id factum est, ut ego salūtiⁱ vestræ
“consulērem.”^j

33. JOSEPH CHARGES THEM TO BRING HIS FATHER INTO EGYPT.

Josēphus hæc locūtus, fratrem suum Benjamīnum
complexus est, eumque lacrymis^d conspersit.

Deinde cætēros quoque fratres^h collacrymans oscu-
lātus est. Tum demum illi cum eo fidenter locūtī
sunt.

Quibus Josēphus : “ite,” inquit, “properāte ad pa-
“trem meum, eīque^f nunciāte filium^e suum vivēre, et
“apud Pharaōnem plurimum posse : persuadēte illi,^f
“ut in Ægyptum cum omni familiā commīgret.”ⁱ

^a § 119, R. XXIII.

^b § 103, R. V.

ⁱ § 112, R. V.

^b § 28, Obs. 3, 1st.

^f § 123, Obs. 2.

^j § 140. 1, 4th.

^c § 145, R. LVIII.

^g § 97, R. I.

^h § 116, R. I.

^d § 129, R. XXXV.

^h § 123, R. XXIX.

ⁱ § 140, 1, 3d.

34. PHARAOH SENDS PRESENTS AND CHARIOTS TO JACOB.

Fama de adventu fratrum Josēphi ad aures Regis pervēnit; qui dedit eis ^a munēra perferenda ^b ad patrem cum his mandātis: “Adducite huc patrem vestrum et omnem familiam ejus: nec multum curāte supellectilem vestram, quia omnia, ^c quæ opus ^d erunt vobis, ^e præbiturus sum: et omnes opes Ægypti vestræ ^d erunt.”

Misit quoque currus ad vehendum ^f senem et parvulos, et muliēres.

35. JOSEPH'S BRETHREN TELL THEIR FATHER THAT JOSEPH IS LIVING.

Fratres Josēphi festinantes reversi sunt ad patrem suum eīque nunciavērunt Josēphum ^g vivēre, ^h et principem esse totius Ægypti.

Ad quem nuncium, Jacōbus quasi e gravi somno excitātus ⁱ obstupuit, nec primum filiis ^a rem narrantibus fidem adhibēbat; sed postquam vidit plaustra et dona sibi ^j a Josēpho ^k missa, recēpit animum; et: “Mihi “satis est,” inquit, “si vivat adhuc Josēphus meus, ibo “et vidēbo eum antè quā moriar.” ^l

36. JACOB DEPARTS WITH ALL HIS FAMILY, TO GO INTO EGYPT, IN THE YEAR 1706, B. C.

Jacōbus profectus cum filiis et nepotibus pervēnit in

^a § 123, R. XXIX.

^b § 146, Obs. 3.

^c § 98, Obs. 5.

^d § 103, Obs. 2.

^e § 111, R. XVI.

^f § 147, R. LXII.

^g § 145, R. LVIII.

^h § 47, 11, 2.

ⁱ § 146, R. LIX.

^j § 126, R. III.

^k § 126, Obs. 2.

^l § 140, 4.

Ægyptum, et præmisit Judam ad Josēphum, ut eum faceret ^a certiorem de adventu suo.

Confestim Josēphus processit obviām patri, ^b quem ut vidit, in collum ejus insiliit, et flens flentem complexus est :

Tum Jacōbus : “Satis diu vixi,” inquit ; “nunc “æquo anīmo ^c moriar, quoniam conspectu ^d tuo frui “mihi ^e licuit, et te mihi ^f superstitem relinquo.”

37. JOSEPH MENTIONS TO THE KING THE ARRIVAL OF HIS FATHER.

Josēphus adiit Pharaōnem, ^g eiūque nunciāvit patrem ^h suum advenisse : ⁱ constituit etiam quinque e fratribus suis coram Rege.

Qui eos interrogāvit quidnam opēris ^j habērent ; illi responderunt se ^h esse pastōres. ^k

Tum rex dixit Josēpho : “Ægyptus in potestāte tuā “est : cura ut pater et fratres tui in optimo loco habi- “tent ; ^l et si qui sint ^m inter eos gnavi et industrii, “trade eis ⁿ curam pecōrum meōrum.”

38. HE PRESENTS HIS FATHER TO PHARAOH.

Josēphus duxit quoque patrem suum ad Pharaōnem, qui, salutātus a Jacōbo, percontātus est ab eo quā esset ^o ætāte ? ^p

Jacōbus respondit Regi : ^q “Vixi centum et triginta

^a § 140, 1.

^b § 135, R. XLVII.

^c § 129, R. XXXV.

^d § 121, R. XXVI.

^e § 113, R. XVIII.

^f § 111, R. XVI.

^g § 136, R. LII.

^h § 145, R. LVIII.

ⁱ § 47, 11, 5.

^j § 106, R. VIII.

^k § 103, R. V.

^l § 140, 1, 3d.

^m § 140, 2.

ⁿ § 123, R. XXIX.

^o § 140, 5.

^p § 106, R. VII.

^q § 123, Obs. 2.

“annos, ^a nec adeptus sum senectutem beatam avorum meorum.” Tum bene precatus Regi, ^b discessit ab eo.

Josēphus autem patrem et fratres suos collocavit in optimā parte Ægypti, eisque omnium rerum abundantiam supeditavit.

39. JACOB DESIRES TO BE BURIED IN THE SEPULCHRE OF HIS FATHERS.

Jacōbus vixit decem et septem annos, ^d postquam commigrasset ^e in Ægyptum.

Ubi sensit mortem ^d sibi ^e imminere, arcesso ^f Josēpho dixit: “Si me amas, jura te ^d id facturum esse “quod a te petam, scilicet, ut ne me sepelias ^g in Ægypto, sed corpus meum transfēras ^g ex hāc regiōne, et “condas ^g in sepulcro majōrum meorum.”

Josēphus autem: “faciam,” inquit, “quod ^h jubes, “pater.”

“Jura ergo mihi,” ⁱ ait Jacōbus, “te ^d certò id facturum esse.” Josēphus juravit in verba patris.

40. JOSEPH PRESENTS HIS TWO SONS TO HIS FATHER THAT HE MAY BLESS THEM.

Josēphus adduxit ad patrem duos filios suos, Manassem et Ephraïmum: posuit Manassem, qui natu^j major erat, ad dextram senis, Ephraïmum verò minorem ad sinistram ejus.

^a § 131, R. XLI.

^b § 112, R. V.

^c § 140, 4.

^d § 145, R. LVIII.

^e § 112, R. IV.

^f § 146, R. LX.

^g § 140, 1, 3d.

^h § 99, Obs. 1, 4th.

ⁱ § 123, Obs. 2.

^j § 128, R. XXXIV.

At Jacōbus, decussans^a manus dextram imposuit Ephraïmo, sinistram autem Manassi, et utriq̃ue^b simul bene precātus est. Quod Josēphus animadvertens ægrē tulit, et conātus est manus patris commutāre.

At pater restitit, dixitque Josēpho :^c “Scio, fili^d mi, “scio hunc^e esse majōrem natu,^f et illum minōrem ; “id prudens^g feci.”

Ita Jacōbus Ephraïmum Manassi anteposuit.

41. JOSEPH PERFORMS THE LAST DUTIES TO HIS FATHER.

Ut^h vidit Josēphus extinctum patrem, ruit super eum flens, et osculātus est eum, luxitque illum diu.

Deinde præcēpit medicis^c ut condirentⁱ corpus, et ipse cum fratribus multisque Ægyptiis patrem deportāvit in regiōnem Chanaan.

Ibi funus fecērunt cum magno planctu,^j et sepeliē-
runt corpus in speluncā, ubi jacēbant Abrahāmus et Isaācus, reversique sunt in Ægyptum.

42. JOSEPH COMFORTS HIS BRETHREN.

Post mortem patris timēbant fratres Josēphi ne^k ulciscerētur^l injuriam quam acceperat ; misērunt igitur ad illum rogantes^m nomīne patris, ut eam obliviscerētur,ⁱ sibiqueⁿ condonāret.

^a § 149, R. LIX.

^b § 112, R. V.

^c § 123, Obs. 2.

^d § 30, Obs. 2.

^e § 145, R. LVIII.

^f § 128, R. XXXIV.

^g § 98, Obs. 10.

^h § 140, Obs. 1.

ⁱ § 140, 1, 3d.

^j § 129, Obs. 2.

^k § 140, Obs. 6.

^l § 140, 1.

^m § 146, Obs. 3.

ⁿ § 149, R. LXV.

Quibus^a Josēphus respondit : “ Non est quod^b time-
 “ātis ;^c vos quidem malo in me anīmo^d fecistis ; sed
 “Deus convertit illud in bonum ;^e ego vos alam et fa-
 “miliās vestras.” Consōlātus est eos plurīmīs verbis,^d
 et lenīter cum illis locūtus est.

43. THE DEATH OF JOSEPH.

Josēphus vixit annos^f centum et decem ; quumque
 esset^g mortī^h proxīmus,ⁱ convocāvit fratres suos, et
 illos admonuit se^j brevi moritūrum esse.^k

“Ego,” inquit, “jam morior : Deus vos non desēret,
 “sed erit vobis præsidiū,^l et dedūcet vos aliquando
 “ex Ægypto in regiōnem, quam patrīb^m nostris pro-
 “mīsīt ; oro vos atque obtestor ut illuc ossa mea de-
 portētis.”ⁿ

Deinde placidē obiit : corpus ejus conditum est, et
 in ferētro positum.

^a § 123, Obs. 2.

^f § 131, R. XLI.

^k § 47, 11, 8.

^b § 99, Obs. 1, 4th.

^g § 140, Obs. 4.

^l § 114, R. XIX.

^c § 141, R. I, Obs. 1.

^h § 111, R. XVI.

^m § 123, R. XXIX.

^d § 129, R. XXXV.

ⁱ § 26, 4.

ⁿ § 140, 1, 3d.

^e § 98, Obs. 5.

^j § 145, LVIII.

VOCABULARY.

EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS

<i>adj.</i>	adjective.	<i>inc.</i>	inceptive.	<i>ord.</i>	ordinal.
<i>adv.</i>	adverb.	<i>ind.</i>	indeclinable.	<i>part.</i>	participle
<i>c.</i>	common gender.	<i>imp.</i>	impersonal	<i>pass.</i>	passive.
<i>conj.</i>	conjunction.	<i>int.</i>	interjection.	<i>pl.</i>	plural.
<i>compar.</i>	comparative.	<i>intr.</i>	intransitive.	<i>prep.</i>	preposition.
<i>d.</i>	doubtful gender.	<i>irr.</i>	irregular.	<i>pret.</i>	preteritive.
<i>def.</i>	defective.	<i>m.</i>	masculine.	<i>pro.</i>	pronoun.
<i>dep.</i>	deponent.	<i>n.</i>	neuter.	<i>rel.</i>	relative.
<i>dis.</i>	distributive	<i>neut. pass.</i>	neuter passive.	<i>subs.</i>	substantive.
<i>f.</i>	feminine.	<i>num.</i>	numeral.	<i>sup.</i>	superlative.
<i>fr.</i>	from.	<i>obso.</i>	obsolete.	<i>tr.</i>	transitive.

The declension of nouns is known by the termination of the genitive singular, placed next after the word.

The conjugations of the regular verbs are distinguished by the vowel before *-e*s of the infinitive.

A, ab, abs, prep., <i>from</i> ; <i>by</i> ; (abl.)	Abundantia, æ, f. <i>plenty</i> ; <i>abundance</i> ; from
Abdūco, ducēre, duxi, duc- tum, tr. (ab & duco,) <i>to</i> <i>lead away</i> .	Abundo, āre, āvi, ātum, intr. (ab & undo,) <i>to rise in</i> <i>waves</i> ; <i>to abound</i> .
Abeo, ire, ivi, itum, intr. irr. <i>to go away</i> .	Ac, conj. <i>and</i> ; <i>as</i> ; <i>than</i> .
Abjicio, jicēre, jeci, jectum, tr. (ab & jacio,) <i>to cast</i> <i>away</i> .	Accēdo, cedēre, cessi, ces- sum, intr. (ad & cedo,) <i>to</i> <i>approach</i> ; <i>to advance</i> .
Abrahāmus, i. m. <i>Abraham</i> .	Accido, cidēre, cīdi, intr. (ad & cado,) <i>to fall down</i> <i>at</i> ; accidit, imp. <i>it hap-</i> <i>pens</i> .
Absolvo, solvēre, solvi, solū- tum, tr. (ab & solvo,) <i>to</i> <i>loose</i> ; <i>to release</i> .	Accipio, cipēre, cēpi, ceptum, tr. (ad & capio,) <i>to take</i> ; <i>to receive</i> .
Absum, esse, fui, intr. (ab & sum,) <i>to be absent</i> ; <i>to be</i> <i>gone</i> .	Accūso, āre, āvi, ātum, tr

- (ad & causor,) *to accuse ; to blame.*
- Acer, acris, acre, adj. (acrior, acerrimus,) *sharp ; vehement ; violent.*
- Acies, ei, f. *an army ; a battle ; an edge.*
- Ad, prep. *to ; near ; at ; with a numeral, about.*
- Addico, dicere, dixi, dictum, tr. (ad & dico,) *to adjudge ; to assign.*
- Adduco, ducere, duxi, ductum, tr. (ad & duco,) *to lead ; to bring.*
- Addo, dēre, dīdi, dītum, tr. (ad & do,) *to add ; to give.*
- Adeo, adire, adii, adītum, tr. intr. irr. (ad & eo,) *to go to.*
- Adhibeo, hibere, hibui, hibitum, tr. (ad & habeo,) *to admit ; to use.*
- Adhuc, adv. (ad & huc,) *hitherto ; as yet ; still.*
- Adimo, imēre, ēmi, emptum, tr. (ad & emo,) *to take away.*
- Adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum, tr. dep. *to reach ; to overtake.*
- Adītus, ūs, m. *an approach.*
- Adjūro, āre, āvi, tr. *to swear ; to adjure.*
- Adjūvo, āre, ūvi, ūtum, tr. *to assist.*
- Administro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. (ad & ministro,) *to administer ; to manage.*
- Admitto, mittere, mīsi, misum, tr. (ad & mitto,) *to admit ; to allow.*
- Admoneo, monēre, monui, monitum, tr. (ad & moneo,) *to admonish.*
- Adoleo, dolēre, dolui, et dolēvi, dultum, tr. *to worship ; to burn.*
- Adōro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. (ad & oro,) *to adore ; to pray to.*
- Adspicio, spicere, spexi, spectum, tr. (ad & specio,) *to behold ; to regard.*
- Adsto, stāre, stīti, titum, intr. (ad & sto,) *to stand by, to be near.*
- Adsum, esse, fui, intr. irr. (ad & sum,) *to be present ; to aid.*
- Advenio, venire, vēnio, venum, intr. (ad & venio,) *to arrive ; to come.*
- Adventus, ūs, m. (from advenio,) *an advent ; an arrival.*
- Adversus, a, um, adj. *adverse ; opposite ; unfavorable ; bad.*
- Advolo, āre, āvi, ātum, intr. (ad & volo,) *to fly to ; to hasten.*
- Ædifico, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. (sedes & facio,) *to build.*
- Ægrè, adv. *ill.*
- Ægyptius, a, um, adj. *an Egyptian.*
- Ægyptus, i, f. *Egypt.*
- Æolus, i, m. *Eolus, called god of the winds.*

Æquus, a, um, adj. <i>equal</i> ; æquo animo, <i>with equanimity</i> .	indef. pron. <i>some</i> ; <i>some one</i> ; <i>a certain one</i> .
Æstas, ætis, f. <i>summer</i> .	Alius, a, ud, adj. <i>an other</i> ; <i>other</i> ; alii—alii, <i>some—others</i> .
Æstuo, ære, ævi, ætum, intr. <i>to be very hot</i> ; <i>to boil</i> .	Alo, ěre, ui, ĭtum, tr. <i>to maintain</i> .
Ætas, ætis, f. <i>age</i> .	Alter, ěra, ěrum, adj. <i>the one</i> ; (of two,) <i>the other</i> .
Affĕro, ferre, attŭli, allātum, tr. irr. (ad & fero,) <i>to bring</i> ; <i>to carry</i> .	Altum, i, n. <i>the sea</i> ; <i>the deep</i> .
Afficio, icĕre, ěci, ectum, (ad & facio,) <i>to affect</i> ; <i>to move</i> .	Altus, a, um, adj. (ior, issĭmus,) <i>high</i> ; <i>deep</i> ; <i>loud</i> .
Affigo, figĕre, fixi, fixum, (ad & figo,) <i>to affix</i> ; <i>to fasten</i> .	Amĭcĕ, adv. -cius, -cissimĕ, <i>in a friendly manner</i> ; <i>kindly</i> , and
Africa, æ, f. <i>Africa</i> .	Amicitia, æ, f. <i>friendship</i> , from
Ager, gri, m. <i>a field</i> ; <i>land</i> ; <i>a country</i> .	Amĭcus, a, um, adj. <i>friendly</i> .
Agnosco, noscĕre, nŏvi, nĭtum, tr. (ad & nosco,) <i>to recognize</i> ; <i>to know</i> .	Amĭcus, i, m. <i>a friend</i> .
Agnus, i, m. <i>a lamb</i> .	Amitto, mittĕre, mĭsi, missum, tr. (a & mitto,) <i>to send away</i> ; <i>to lose</i> .
Ago, agĕre, egi, actum, tr. <i>to drive</i> ; <i>to lead</i> ; <i>to act</i> ; <i>to do</i> .	Amo, ære, ævi, ātum, tr. <i>to love</i> .
Aio, ais, ait, def. verb, <i>I say</i> , &c.	Amplector, ecti, exus sum, tr. dep. <i>to embrace</i> .
Alba, æ, f. <i>Alba</i> .	Amplectus, ūs, m. <i>an embrace</i> .
Albus, as, um, adj. <i>white</i> .	Amplus, a, um, adj. <i>great</i> ; <i>abundant</i> ; <i>spacious</i> .
Alcibiādes, is, m. <i>Alcibiades</i> .	An, adv. <i>whether</i> ?
Alexander, dri, m. <i>Alexander, king of Macedon</i> .	Ancilla, æ, f. <i>a female servant</i> ; <i>a maid</i> .
Aliĕnus, a, um, adj. <i>of or belonging to another</i> ; <i>foreign</i> ; m. <i>a stranger</i> .	Anĝo, angĕre, anxi, tr. <i>to trouble</i> ; <i>to vex</i> ; <i>to torment</i> .
Aliquando, adv. <i>once</i> ; <i>formerly</i> ; <i>at length</i> ; <i>sometimes</i> .	Animadverto, vertĕre, verti, versum, tr. (animus ad & verdo,) <i>to attend to</i> ; <i>to observe</i> ; <i>to punish</i> .
Aliquis qua, quod, or quid,	

- Anīmus**, i, m. *wind ; the soul ; or mind ; disposition ; spirit.*
Annōna, æ, f. *corn ; produce ; provisions.*
Annūlus, i, m. *a ring.*
Annuo, ēre, ui, intr. (ad & nuō,) *to assent ; to agree.*
Annus, i, m. *a year.*
Ante, prep. *before ; sooner.*
Antepono, ēre, posui, positum, tr. *to prefer.*
Antequam, adv. *before that ; before.*
Antrum, i, n. *a cave.*
Aperio, perire, perui, pertum, tr. *to open ; to discover.*
Appareo, parēre, parui, intr. *to appear ; to be visible.*
Appōno, ponēre, posui, positum, (ad & pono,) *to place before ; to join.*
Apprehendo, hendēre, hendi, hensum, tr. *to understand ; to seize.*
Apud, prep. *at ; among ; before ; to.*
Aqua, æ, f. *water.*
Aquīla, æ, f. *an eagle.*
Aquīlo, ōnis, m. *the north wind.*
Ara, æ, f. *an altar.*
Arbor, ōris, f. *a tree.*
Arcesso, sēre, sīvi, sītum, tr. *to call ; to send for ; to invite.*
Arduus, a, um, adj. *high ; lofty ; steep.*
Argenteus, a, um, adj. *of silver ; made of silver.*
Argīvus, a, um, adj. *of Argos ; Argive.*
Argueo, ēre, ui, ūtum, tr. *to accuse.*
Arma, ōrum, n. *arms.*
Arōma, ātis, n. *all sweet spices.*
Ars, tis, f. *art ; skill.*
Arundo, īnis, f. *a reed ; an arrow.*
Ascanius, i, m. *Ascanius.*
Assentio, sentīre, sensi, sensum, tr. (ad & sentio,) *to agree ; to agree to.*
Assēquor, -sēqui, -secūtus sum, tr. dep. (ad & sequor,) *to overtake ; to obtain.*
At, conj. *but.*
Ater, tra, trum, adj. *black ; gloomy.*
Atque, conj. *and ; as ; than.*
Audax, ācis, adj. *bold ; audacious ; daring.*
Audēo, audēre, ausus sum, neut. pass. *to dare ; to attempt.*
Audio, īre, īvi, ītum, tr. *to hear.*
Aula, æ, f. *a hall ; a courtyard.*
Aureus, a, um, adj. *golden.*
Auris, is, f. *the ear.*
Aurum, i, n. *gold.*
Auster, tri, m. *the south wind ; wind.*
Aut, conj. *either ; or.*
Autem, conj. *but ; yet.*
Auxilium, i, n. *help ; aid ; assistance.*

Averto, -vertĕre, -verti, -ver-sum, (a & verito,) to turn away; to avert.	nomen, or surname of the Julian family.
Avidĕ, adv. anxiously.	Cæter, or Cætĕrus, -a, -um, adj. the rest; the other.
Avis, is, f. a bird.	Camĕlus, i, c. a camel.
Avus, ī, m. a grandfather.	Campus, i, m. a field; a plain.

B.

Beātus, a, um, adj. (ior, issī-mus,) happy; blessed.	Canistrum, i, n. a basket.
Belgæ, ārum, m. pl. the Belgians.	Cantus, -ūs, m. a song; crow-ing.
Bellum, i, n. war.	Caper, pri, m. a he-goat.
Bene, adv. (melius, optīmĕ,) well; finely.	Capio, ĕre, cepi, captum. tr. to hold; to take; to capture.
Beneficium, i, n. a benefit, a kindness.	Caput, ĩtis, n. a head; life.
Benignĕ, adv. kindly; from	Carcer, ĕris, m. a prison.
Benignus, a, um, adj. kind; benign.	Carmen, ĩnis, n. a song; a poem.
Benjamīnus, i, m. Benjamin.	Caro, carnis, f. flesh.
Bibŭlus, i, n. Bibŭlus, a colleague of Julius Cæsar.	Carthago, ĩnis, f. Carthage.
Biennium, i, n. the space of two years.	Carus, -a, um, (carior, caris-simus,) adj. dear.
Bonus, a, um, adj. (melior, optīmus,) good; happy; kind.	Castigo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to chastise; to punish.
Bos, bovis, c. an ox; a cow;	Castor, ōris, m. Castor.
Brevis, e, adj. short; brief.	Castra, ōrum, n. pl. a camp.
Brutus, i, m. the name of a noble family; Brutus.	Casus, ūs, m. a fall; an accident; a calamity.
Byssīnus, a, um, adj. made of cambric.	Catīlina, æ, m. Catiline, the conspirator.

C.

Cæsar, is, m. Cæsar; a cog-	Cato, ōnis, m. Cato.
	Cauda, æ, f. a tail.
	Causa, æ, f. a cause; a reason; lawsuit.
	Cautus, a, um, adj. cautious.
	Celer, celĕris, ĕre, adj. swift; rapid.
	Centum, num. adj. pl. ind. a hundred.
	Centurio, ōnis, m. a centurion.

Cerno, cernĕre, crĕvi, crĕ-	Cogo, ĕre, coĕgi, coactum,
tum, tr. <i>to perceive.</i>	tr. (con & ago,) <i>to compel ;</i>
Certĕ, or certò, adv. <i>certain-</i>	<i>to collect.</i>
<i>ly ; surely.</i>	Cognito, ònis, f. <i>a knowledge ;</i>
Cervus, i, m. <i>a stag.</i>	<i>an examination.</i>
Cesso, āre, āvi, ātum, intr.	Cognosco, ĕre, nōvi, nĭtum,
<i>to cease ; to yield.</i>	tr. (con & nosco,) <i>to learn ;</i>
Cetĕrus, -ĕra, -ĕrum, adj.	<i>to know.</i>
<i>other ; the other ; the rest.</i>	Collachrĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum,
Chanaan, ind. <i>Canaan.</i>	tr. <i>to weep with.</i>
Eibaria, òrum, n. pl. <i>food ;</i>	Collòco, āre, āri, ātum, tr.
<i>victuals.</i>	(con & loco,) <i>to place ; to</i>
Cibus, i, m. <i>food ; nourish-</i>	<i>set up.</i>
<i>ment.</i>	Collum, i, n. <i>the neck.</i>
Cicĕro, ònis, m. <i>Cicero.</i>	Color, òris, m. <i>a color.</i>
Ciconia, æ, f. <i>a stork.</i>	Comĕdo, ĕre, ĕdi ĕsum, &
Cilicium, i, n. <i>hair cloth ;</i>	<i>estum, tr. to eat up.</i>
<i>sackcloth.</i>	Comes, ĭtis, c. (con & eo,) <i>a</i>
Circumdo, āre, dĕdi, dĕtum,	<i>companion.</i>
tr. (circum & do,) <i>to sur-</i>	Commigro, āre, āvi, ātum,
<i>round.</i>	intr. (con & migro,) <i>to emi-</i>
Circumsto, āre, stĕti, intr.	<i>grate.</i>
(circum & sto,) <i>to stand</i>	Committo, ĕre, ĭsi, ĭssum, tr.
<i>round.</i>	(con & mitto,) <i>to commit ;</i>
Circumvenio, ĭre, vĕni, vĕn-	<i>to entrust.</i>
tum, tr. (circum & venio,) <i>to go round ; to surround.</i>	Commoveo, ĕre, òvi, òtum,
Circumvolito, āre, āvi, tr. <i>to</i>	tr. (con & moveo,) <i>to ex-</i>
<i>fly about.</i>	<i>cite ; to induce.</i>
Civitas, ātis, f. <i>a state ; cĭ-</i>	Commūto, āre, āvi, ātum, tr
<i>zenship.</i>	<i>to change.</i>
Clades, ĭs, f. <i>damage ; slaugh-</i>	Compello, āre, āvi, ātum, tr.
<i>ter ; defeat.</i>	<i>to address.</i>
Clarus, -a, -um. (clarior, cla-	Compello, ellĕre, ũli, ul-
rissĭmus,) <i>clear ; famous.</i>	sum, tr. <i>to drive ; to com-</i>
Classis, ĭs, f. <i>a class ; a fleet.</i>	<i>pel.</i>
Clementer, adv. (iūs, ĭssimĕ,) <i>gently, kindly.</i>	Complector, ecti, exus sum,
Cœpi, -isse, def. <i>I began ; or,</i>	intr dep. <i>to embrace ; to</i>
<i>I begin.</i>	<i>reach.</i>
	Compròbo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr.
	<i>to approve ; to verify.</i>

Conclāve, is, n. <i>a private room.</i>	dep. <i>to console; to comfort.</i>
Condemno, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to condemn.</i>	Conspēctus, ūs, m. <i>a seeing; a sight; a view.</i>
Conditio, ōnis, f. <i>a condition.</i>	Conspergo, gēre, si, sum, tr. <i>to besprinkle.</i>
Condo, ēre, idi, itum, tr. (con & do,) <i>to found; to build; to conceal.</i>	Conspicio, icēre, exi, ectum, tr. <i>to behold; to see.</i>
Condōno, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. (con & dono,) <i>to pardon; to forgive.</i>	Constat, imp. <i>it is certain; it is evident.</i>
Confestim, adv. <i>immediately; continually.</i>	Constituo, ēre, ui, ūtum, to <i>place; to establish; to resolve.</i>
Conficio, ēre, ēci, ectum, tr. (con & facio,) <i>to make; to finish.</i>	Consto, stāre, stīti, stītum. intr. <i>to stop.</i>
Confiteor, ēri, fessus sum, tr. <i>dep. to confess; to acknowledge.</i>	Consul, ūlis, m. <i>a consul; hence,</i>
Congēro, erēre, essi, estum, tr. (con & gero,) <i>to collect.</i>	Consūlo, ēre, ui, tum, tr. <i>to advise together; to consult.</i>
Conjector, ōris, m. <i>an interpreter of dreams; a sooth-sayer.</i>	Consumo, ēre, sumpsi, sumptum, tr. (con & sumo,) <i>to consume.</i>
Conjicio, ēre, jēci, jectum, tr. (con & jacio,) <i>to cast; to conjecture.</i>	Contineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr. (con & teneo,) <i>to contain.</i>
Consēquor, consēqui, consecūtus sum, tr. <i>dep. to obtain; to gain; to follow.</i>	Continuō, adv. <i>immediately; in succession.</i>
Considēro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to consider; to think.</i>	Contra, prep. <i>against.</i>
Consīdo, -ēre, -sēdi, -sesum, intr. <i>to sit down to encamp.</i>	Contumelia, æ, f. <i>an affront; a taunt.</i>
Consilium, i, n. <i>counsel; design; a plan; a council.</i>	Convenio, īre, vēni, ventum, intr. (con & venio,) <i>to come together; to assemble.</i>
Consolatio, ōnis, f. <i>consolation; comfort.</i>	Converto, vertēre, verti, versum, tr. (con & verito,) <i>to convert; to change.</i>
Consōlor, āri, ātus sum, tr.	Convivium, i, n. (con & vivo,) <i>a banquet; a feast.</i>
	Convōco, āre, āvi, ātum, tr.

(con & voco,) <i>to assemble.</i>	Curo, -āre, -āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to take care of; to care.</i>
Coorior, cooriri, coortus sum, intr. dep. <i>to arise, as in mutiny.</i>	Currus, ūs, m. <i>a chariot</i>
Copia, æ, f. <i>an abundance; copiae, pl. forces; troops.</i>	Cursus, ūs, m. <i>a running; a course.</i>
Cor, dis, n. <i>the heart.</i>	D.
Coram, prep. <i>in the presence of; before; adv. openly.</i>	
Corinthus, i, f. <i>Corinth.</i>	Damno, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to adjudge to loss; to condemn.</i>
Cornix, icis, f. <i>a crow.</i>	Danai, ōrum, m. pl. <i>the Greeks.</i>
Cornu, n. indec. <i>a horn.</i>	De, prep. <i>concerning; from; of.</i>
Corpus, ōris, n. <i>a body; a corpse.</i>	Dea, æ, f. <i>a goddess.</i>
Credūlus, -a, um, adj. <i>credulous; easy of belief.</i>	Deambūlo, āre, āvi, ātum, intr. <i>to walk abroad.</i>
Crema, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to burn; to consume.</i>	Debello, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. <i>to conquer; to subdue.</i>
Creo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to make; to elect.</i>	Debeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, tr. <i>to owe; ought, or should.</i>
Crocodilus, i, m. <i>a crocodile.</i>	Decēdo, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, intr. <i>to depart; to yield; to die.</i>
Crudēlis, -e, (crudelior, crudelissimus,) <i>cruel.</i>	Decem, num, adj. <i>ten.</i>
Culmus, i, m. <i>a stalk of corn.</i>	Decēt, imp. <i>it becomes.</i>
Culpa, æ, f. <i>a fault; guilt; blame.</i>	Decus, ōris, n. <i>an ornament; honor.</i>
Culpo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. <i>to blame.</i>	Dedūco, -cēre, -xi, -ctum, tr. (de & duco,) <i>to lead forth; to bring.</i>
Cum, prep. <i>with; adv. when: cum—tum, not only—but also.</i>	Deērunt, see Desum.
Cunctus, a, um, adj. <i>all; the whole.</i>	Defēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, tr. irr. <i>to conceive; to give.</i>
Cupīdus, -a, -um, adj. (ior, issimus,) <i>desirous; covetous.</i>	Defungor, -fungi, -functus sum, intr. dep. <i>to perform; to finish.</i>
Cupio, -ēre, -īvi, -ītum, tr. <i>to desire; to wish.</i>	Degenero, -āre, -āvi, -ātum intr. <i>to degenerate.</i>
Cur, adv. <i>why; wherefore.</i>	
Cura, æ, f. <i>care; anxiety.</i>	

Degēner, ěris, adj. <i>cowardly</i> .	Detrūdo, ěre, si, sum, tr. <i>to push down ; to shove off</i> .
Deinde, adv. <i>then ; further ; after that</i> .	Deus, i, m. <i>God ; a God</i> .
Deleo, -ěre, -ěvi, -ětum, tr. <i>to blot out ; to destroy</i> .	Devōro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. (de & voro,) <i>to devour ; to eat up</i> .
Demum, adv. <i>at length ; in fine</i> .	Dexter, tra, trum, adj. <i>the left</i> .
Denique, adv. <i>finally ; at last</i> .	Dico, ěre, dixi, dictum, tr. <i>to say ; to name ; to call</i> .
Depōno, -ěre, -posui, -positum, tr. (de & pono,) <i>to lay down, or aside</i> .	Dictātor, ōris, m. <i>a dictator ; a chief magistrate</i> .
Deporto, -āre, āvi, ātum, tr. (de & porto,) <i>to carry down</i> .	Dies, ěi, m. or f. in sing.; m. in pl. <i>a day ; in dies, daily ; every day</i> .
Deprehendo, -ěre, -di, -sum, tr. <i>to seize ; to detect</i> .	Difficilis, e, adj. (difficilior, difficillimus,) <i>difficult</i> .
Descendo, -ěre, -di, -sum, intr. (de & scando,) <i>to descend ; in certāmen, to engage in contest</i> .	Digitus, i, m. <i>a finger</i> .
Desěro, -ěre, -erui, -ertum, tr. <i>to desert ; to abandon</i> .	Dignitas, ātis, f. <i>dignity ; office ; honor</i> .
Despicio, -spicěre, -spexi, spectrum, tr. <i>to look down ; to disregard</i> .	Dignus, a, um, adj. <i>worthy</i> .
Desum, esse, fui, intr. irr. (de & sum,) <i>to be wanting</i> .	Diligens, ens, ens, adj. <i>diligent</i> .
Deterreo, -ěre, -ui, ětum, tr. <i>to deter ; to frighten from</i> .	Diligentur, adv. <i>diligently ; carefully</i> .
Deterior, adj. compar. (sup. deterrimus,) <i>worse</i> .	Diligo, ěre, lexi, lectum, tr. (dis & lego,) <i>to select ; to esteem</i> .
Detineo, ěre, tinui, tentum, tr. (de & teneo,) <i>to hinder ; to stop</i> .	Dimitto, ěre, mīsi, missum, tr. <i>to dismiss ; to send away</i> .
Detrāho, ěre, traxi, tractum, tr. (de & traho) <i>to draw down, to draw off</i> .	Dionysius, i, m. <i>Dionysius</i> .
	Discědo, ěre, cessi, cessum, intr. <i>to depart ; to differ</i> .
	Discipūlus, i, m. <i>a pupil ; a scholar</i> .
	Disco, discěre, didici, tr. <i>to learn</i> .
	Discordia, æ, f. (dis & cor,) <i>discord ; dissension</i> .

Disjicio, jicĕre, jĕci, jectum, tr. <i>to cast.</i>	Dum, adv. & conj. <i>while; whilst; as long as; until.</i>
Dispensātor, ōris, m. <i>a steward.</i>	Duo, æ, o, num. adj. pl. <i>two.</i>
Distribuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, tr. <i>to distribute; to divide.</i>	Duodĕcim, num. adj. ind. pl. <i>twelve.</i>
Ditio, ōnis, rule; power; authority.	Duplex, icis, adj. <i>twofold; double.</i>
Diu, adv. (utius, utissimè,) <i>long; for a long time.</i>	Duplus, a, um, num. adj. <i>double; twice as much.</i>
Dives, itis, adj. <i>rich; fertile.</i>	Durus, a, um, adj. (durior, durissimus,) <i>hard; rough; hardy.</i>
Divĭdo, vidĕre, ĭsi, ĭsum, tr. <i>to divide.</i>	E.
Divinĭtĭs, adv. <i>divinely.</i>	
Divitiæ, ārum, f. pl. <i>riches; wealth.</i>	E, or ex, prep. <i>out of; from; among.</i>
Do, dāre, dĕdi, dātum, tr. <i>to give; dare pœnam, to suffer punishment.</i>	Ecce, int. <i>see! lo! behold!</i>
Doceo, ĕre, docui, doctum, tr. <i>to teach.</i>	Edoceo, ĕre, docui, doctum, tr. <i>to instruct; to teach.</i>
Dolor, ōris, m. <i>grief; sorrow; pain.</i>	Effĕro, efferre, extuli, elātum, tr. irr. <i>to bring out, or forth.</i>
Domĭnus, i, m. <i>lord; master; owner.</i>	Effundo, ĕre, ūdi, ūsum, tr. <i>to pour out; to shed.</i>
Dormus, ūs & i, f. <i>a house; domi, at home; domum, home.</i>	Egestas, ātis, f. <i>want; need.</i>
Donum, i, n. <i>a gift; a present.</i>	Ego, mei, pro. <i>I.</i>
Dormio, ĭre, ĭvi, ĭtum, intr. <i>to sleep.</i>	Elabor, bi, psus sum, dep. intr. <i>to glide away.</i>
Dubĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, intr. <i>to doubt; to hesitate.</i>	Elephantus, i, m. <i>an elephant.</i>
Duco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, tr. <i>to lead; ducĕre uxōrem, to marry.</i>	Elephas, antis, m. <i>an elephant.</i>
Dulcis, e, adj. (dulcior, dulcissimus,) <i>sweet; pleasant.</i>	Eloquentia, æ, f. <i>eloquence; (e & loquor.)</i>
	Emergo, ĕre, si sum, intr. <i>to emerge; to come out.</i>
	Emo, emĕre, emi, emptum, tr. <i>to buy; to purchase.</i>
	En, adv. <i>lo! behold!</i>

Enascor, enasci, enātus sum, int. <i>to spring from ; to rise up.</i>	tr. dep. <i>to attempt ; to try.</i>
Enim, conj. <i>for ; but ; truly ; indeed.</i>	Expergiscor, gisci, rectus sum, tr. dep. <i>to awaken.</i>
Eo, ire, ivi, itum, intr. irr. <i>to go.</i>	Explōro, āre āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to view ; to search.</i>
Ephraïmus, i, m. <i>Ephraim.</i>	Expōno, ěre, osui, ositum, tr. <i>to set forth ; to expose.</i>
Eques, ĩtis, m. <i>a knight ; a horseman ; pl. cavalry.</i>	Exprīmo, ěre, essi, essum, tr. <i>to press out ; to squeeze ; to express.</i>
Equus, i, m. <i>a horse.</i>	Exprōbo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. <i>to upbraid ; to reproach ; to blame.</i>
Erga, prep. <i>towards.</i>	Exsolvo, vĕre, vi, ūtum, tr. <i>to loose ; to free ; to pay.</i>
Ergo, conj. <i>therefore.</i>	Extendo, ěre, endi, ensum, tr. <i>to extend.</i>
Error, ōris, m. <i>an error.</i>	Extinguo, ěre, xi, cium, tr. <i>to put out ; to extinguish ; to put to death.</i>
Erumpo, ěre, rūpi, ruptum, intr. <i>to burst forth.</i>	Extrāho, ěre, traxi, tractum, tr. (ex & traho,) <i>to draw out ; to extract.</i>
Esca, æ, f. <i>food ; meat.</i>	Extruo, ěre, uxi, uctum, tr. (ex & struo,) <i>to build.</i>
Et, conj. <i>and ; also ; even : et—et, both, and.</i>	
Evertō, vertĕre, versi, ver-sum, tr. <i>to overthrow.</i>	
Ex, prep. (before a vowel,) see E.	
Excĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to excite ; to arouse.</i>	
Exclāmo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. & intr. <i>to exclaim ; to cry out.</i>	
Excusatio, ōnis, f. <i>an excuse ; a defence.</i>	
Exemplum, i, n. <i>an example ; an instance.</i>	
Exeo, ĩre, ĩvi & ii, ĩtum, intr. irr. <i>to go out ; to depart.</i>	
Exercĭtus, ūs, m. <i>an army.</i>	
Exilis, e, adj. <i>lean ; thin.</i>	
Exitus, ūs, m. <i>an exit ; the issue ; the event.</i>	
Expecto, -āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to expect ; to wait for.</i>	
Exterior, ĩri, expertus sum,	

F.

Fabula, æ, f. <i>a story ; a fable.</i>
Fabius, i, m. <i>Fabius, the Roman.</i>
Facies, iĕi, f. (facio,) <i>a face ; appearance.</i>
Facĭlis, e, adj. <i>easy.</i>
Facio, ěre, feci, factum, tr. <i>to do ; to make ; to perform : facĕre iter, to travel.</i>
Factum, i, n. <i>a deed ; an action.</i>

Fallax, ācis, adj. <i>deceitful</i> ; <i>vain</i> .	pass. <i>to be made</i> ; <i>to be-</i> <i>come</i> ; <i>fit, it happens</i> .
Fama, æ, f. <i>fame</i> ; <i>reputa-</i> <i>tion</i> .	Firmitas, ātis, f. <i>firmness</i> .
Famis, is, f. <i>hunger</i> ; <i>fa-</i> <i>mine</i> .	Flagitium, i, n. <i>an outrage</i> ; <i>a crime</i> .
Familia, æ, f. <i>a family</i> ; pl. <i>servants</i> .	Fleo, ěre, evi, etum, tr. & intr. <i>to weep</i> ; <i>to lament</i> ;
Familiāris, e, adj. <i>of the same</i> <i>family</i> ; <i>familiar</i> .	Flos, oris. m. <i>a flower</i> ; <i>a</i> <i>blossom</i> .
Fascis, is, m. <i>a bundle</i> ; pl. <i>fascēs</i> .	Flumen, inis, n. <i>a river</i> ; <i>a</i> <i>flowing</i> .
Fateor, ěri, fassus sum, tr. dep. <i>to confess</i> .	Fædus, a, um, <i>loathsome</i> ; <i>filthy</i> ; <i>foul</i> .
Fatum, i, n. <i>fate</i> ; <i>destiny</i> ; pl. <i>the fates</i> .	Fons, tis, m. <i>a fountain</i> ; <i>a</i> <i>source</i> .
Faveo, ěre, favi, fautum, intr. <i>to favor</i> .	Fore, def. verb, from forem, <i>to be about to be</i> .
Felix, ĩcis, adj. <i>happy</i> ; <i>fruit-</i> <i>ful</i> ; <i>favorable</i> .	Formōsus, a, um, adj. <i>beau-</i> <i>tiful</i> ; <i>handsome</i> .
Femīna, æ, f. <i>a female</i> ; <i>a</i> <i>woman</i> .	Fortè, adv. <i>accidentally</i> ; <i>by</i> <i>chance</i> .
Fera, æ, f. <i>a wild beast</i> .	Fortis, e, adj. <i>bold</i> ; <i>brave</i> ; <i>courageous</i> .
Ferētrum, i, n. <i>a bier</i> ; <i>a cof-</i> <i>fin</i> .	Fortūna, æ, f. <i>fortune</i> ; <i>chance</i> .
Ferio, ĩre, tr. <i>to strike</i> ; <i>to</i> <i>beat</i> .	Forum, i, n. <i>the forum</i> ; <i>the</i> <i>market-place</i> .
Fero, ferre, tuli, latum, tr. irr. <i>to bear</i> ; <i>to carry</i> ; <i>to</i> <i>relate</i> ; <i>to produce</i> .	Fovea, æ, f. <i>a pit</i> .
Festino, āre, āvi, ātum, intr. <i>to hasten</i> .	Foveo, ěre, ſovi, ſotum, tr. <i>to keep warm</i> ; <i>to hatch</i> .
Fidenter, adv. <i>confidently</i> ; <i>boldly</i> .	Fragor, ōris, m. <i>a crashing</i> .
Fides, ěi, f. <i>fidelity</i> ; <i>faith</i> ; in fidem accipere, <i>to re-</i> <i>ceive under protection</i> .	Fragilitas, ātis, f. <i>frailty</i> ; <i>weakness</i> .
Filius, i, i, m. <i>a son</i> .	Frater, tris, m. <i>a brother</i> .
Fila, æ, f. <i>a thread</i> .	Frigidus, a, um, adj. (ior, is- simus,) <i>cold</i> .
Fio, fiēri, factus sum, irr.	Fructus, ūs, m. <i>fruit</i> ; <i>enjoy-</i> <i>ment</i> .
	Frumentum, i, n. <i>corn</i> ; <i>wheat</i> .

Fruor, frui, frūitus & fructus sum, intr. dep. <i>to enjoy.</i>	Græcia, æ, f. <i>Greece.</i>
Frux, gis, f. <i>fruit.</i>	Græcus, i, m. <i>a Grecian.</i>
Fugio, ĕre, fugi, fugitum, intr. and tr. <i>to fly; to es-</i> <i>cape; to avoid.</i>	Grammatica, æ, f. <i>grammar;</i> <i>the art of grammar.</i>
Fuisti, (See Sum.)	Gratus, a, um, adj. (ior, issi-
Fuit, (See Sum.)	mus,) <i>acceptable; pleas-</i> <i>ing; grateful.</i>
Fungor, i, functus sum, intr. dep. <i>to perform or dis-</i> <i>charge an office; fato, to</i> <i>die.</i>	Gravis, e, adj. (ior, issimus,) <i>heavy; severe; important.</i>
Funus, ĕris, n. <i>a burial.</i>	GreX, gregis, c. <i>a flock; a</i> <i>herd.</i>
Furens, tis, part. of furo, <i>ra-</i> <i>ving.</i>	
Furor, ōris, m. <i>fury; pas-</i> <i>sion; madness.</i>	
Furtum, i, n. <i>theft.</i>	
Futūrus, a, um, part. of sum, <i>to be about to be.</i>	
G.	
Gallus, i, m. <i>a Gaul.</i>	
Gemma, æ, f. <i>a precious</i> <i>stone; buds.</i>	
Gemitus, ūs, m. <i>a groan; a</i> <i>sigh.</i>	
Gener, ĕri, m. <i>a son-in-law.</i>	
Germania, æ, f. <i>Germany.</i>	
Gero, gerĕre, gessi, gestum, <i>to bear; to carry; res</i> <i>gestæ, exploits.</i>	
Gesto, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to</i> <i>bear; to carry about.</i>	
Gigno, gignĕre, genui, geni-	
tum, tr. <i>to beget.</i>	
Gnavus, a, um, adj. <i>diligent.</i>	
Gradus, ūs, m. <i>a step; a</i> <i>stair; rank.</i>	
	H.
	Habeo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, tr. <i>to</i> <i>have; to possess; to es-</i> <i>teem.</i>
	Habito, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to</i> <i>inhabit.</i>
	Hædus, i, m. <i>a kid.</i>
	Hebræus, a, um, adj. <i>a He-</i> <i>brew.</i>
	Hero, ūs, m, a. <i>a priest of</i> <i>Venus.</i>
	Herus, i, m. <i>a lord.</i>
	Hic, hæc, hoc, pro. <i>this; he;</i> <i>she; &c.</i>
	Hic, adv. <i>here.</i>
	Hiems, ĕmis, f. <i>winter; a</i> <i>storm.</i>
	Hispāni, ōrum, m. <i>the Span-</i> <i>iards.</i>
	Historia, æ, f. <i>history.</i>
	Homĕrus, i, m. <i>Homer.</i>
	Homo, ĩnis, c. <i>a man; a per-</i> <i>son.</i>
	Honor, ōris, m. <i>honor; re-</i> <i>spect; an office.</i>
	Honōro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to</i> <i>honor.</i>

Horreum, i, n. <i>a barn; a storehouse; a granary.</i>	& pes,) <i>to fetter; hence, to impede; to hinder.</i>
Hostilis, e, adj. <i>hostile; unfriendly.</i>	Impendo, endēre, endī, ensum, intr. <i>to hang over; to threaten.</i>
Hostis, is, c. <i>an enemy.</i>	Imperium, i, n. <i>a command; government; reign; power.</i>
Huc, adv. <i>hither; huc—illuc, hither—thither.</i>	Impēro, āre, āvi, ātum, <i>to command; to direct; to govern.</i>
Humānus, a, um, adj. <i>human.</i>	Impetro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to obtain by request; to finish.</i>
I.	Impleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, tr. <i>to fill up; to accomplish.</i>
Ibi, adv. <i>there; here; then.</i>	Impōno, ponēre, posui, positum, tr. <i>to impose.</i>
Idem, eādem, idem, pro. <i>the same.</i>	Imprōbē, adv. <i>wickedly; basely; from</i>
Ideo, conj. <i>for that cause; therefore.</i>	Imprōbus, a, um, adj. <i>wicked; bad.</i>
Igītur, adv. <i>therefore; then.</i>	Imus, a, um, sup. of Infērus, <i>which see,</i>
Ignārus, a, um, adj. <i>ignorant.</i>	In, prep. acc. & abl. <i>in; among; against; upon.</i>
Ignis, is, m. <i>fire.</i>	Incertus, a, um, adj. <i>uncertain.</i>
Ignobīlis, e, adj. <i>unknown; ignoble; mean.</i>	Incipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, tr. <i>to commence; to begin.</i>
Ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>not to know.</i>	Inclāmo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to call in.</i>
Ignōtus, a, um, adj. <i>unknown.</i>	Incompertus, a, um, adj. <i>unknown.</i>
Ille, illa, illud, pro. <i>that; he; she; it; the former.</i>	Index, icis, d. <i>an index; a mark; a sign.</i>
Illuc, adv. <i>thither.</i>	Indīco, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. (in & dico,) <i>to indicate; to declare.</i>
Illuxit, impers. <i>it was dawn.</i>	Indignitas, ātis, f. <i>baseness; meanness.</i>
Imitatio, ōnis, f. <i>imitation.</i>	
Imītor, āri, ātus sum, tr. dep. <i>to imitate; to copy.</i>	
Immensus, a, um, adj. <i>boundless; immense.</i>	
Immineo, ēre, ui, intr. <i>to hang over; to threaten.</i>	
Immortālis, e, adj. (in & mortālis,) <i>immortal.</i>	
Impedio, īre, īvi, ītum, tr. (in	

Indōles, is, f. <i>natural disposition ; inherent quality.</i>	Insania, æ, f. <i>insanity ; madness.</i>
Induo, ěre, ui, ūtum, tr. <i>to put on ; to dress ; to clothe.</i>	Insĕro, ěre, erui, ertum, tr. (in & sero,) <i>to put in, or upon ; to insert.</i>
Industrius, a, um, adj. <i>industrious ; active.</i>	Insignis, e, adj. (in & signum,) <i>distinguished ; eminent.</i>
Ineo, ěre, ĩvi & ĩi, ĩtum, tr. et intr. irr. <i>to go into ; to enter upon ; to make.</i>	Instar, ind. <i>the bigness ; the likeness.</i>
Iners, tis, adj. <i>inactive.</i>	Instruo, ěre, struxi, structum, tr. (in & struo,) <i>to arrange ; to supply.</i>
Inferus, a, um, adj. (inferior, infimus, or ĩmus,) <i>low ; humble.</i>	Insŭla, æ, f. <i>an island.</i>
Infestus, a, um, adj. <i>hostile ; inimical.</i>	Insŭper, adv. <i>moreover.</i>
Inflammo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to inflame.</i>	Intellĭgo, ěre, lexi, lectum, tr. <i>to choose between ; to understand.</i>
Ingens, tis, adj. <i>very great ; huge.</i>	Inter, prep. <i>between ; among ; inter se, mutually ; by turns.</i>
Ingenuus, a, um, adj. <i>free ; natural ; ingenuous.</i>	Interea, adv. <i>in the mean time.</i>
Ingravesco, ěre, intr. <i>to grow heavy ; to increase.</i>	Interficio, icĕre, ěci, ectum, tr. <i>to destroy ; to kill ; by turns.</i>
Ingredior, gredi, gressus sum, tr. et intr. dep. (in & gradior) <i>to enter ; to walk upon ; to go.</i>	Interpres, ětis, c. <i>an interpreter.</i>
Inimicus, a, um, adj. (in & amicus,) <i>inimical ; hostile.</i>	Interpretatio, ōnis, f. <i>the interpretation.</i>
Injuria, æ, f. <i>an injury ; an insult.</i>	Interprĕtor, āri, ātus sum, tr. dep. <i>to interpret.</i>
Innocens, tis, adj. (in & nocens,) <i>innocent.</i>	Interrŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to interrogate ; to ask.</i>
Innumĕrus, a, um, adj. (in & numĕrus,) <i>without number.</i>	Introdŭco, cĕre, xi, ctum, tr. (intro & duco,) <i>to introduce ; to lead in.</i>
Inopia, æ, f. <i>want ; scarcity.</i>	Inutilis, e, adj. <i>useless.</i>
Inquam, or inquio, def. <i>I say.</i>	Invideo, ěre, vĭdi, vĭsum, tr. & intr. <i>to envy.</i>

Invenio, ĭre, veni, ventum, tr. (in & venio,) <i>to come to ; to find ; to invent.</i>	Jubeo, ĕre, jussi, jussum, tr. <i>to command ; to order.</i>
Invisus, a, um, adj. <i>envied ; hated ; obnoxious.</i>	Judas, æ, m. <i>Judah.</i>
Invito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. <i>to invite.</i>	Judex, ĭcis, c. <i>a Judge.</i>
Iipse, ipsa, ipsum, pro. <i>he himself ; she herself ; ego ipse, I myself.</i>	Judicium, i, n. <i>a judgment ; a decision.</i>
Ira, æ, f. <i>anger ; rage.</i>	Jugurtha, æ, m. <i>a king of Numidia.</i>
Irātus, a, um, adj. <i>angry ; enraged.</i>	Jupiter, Jovis, m. <i>son of Saturn and king of the gods.</i>
Irrito, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to make angry ; to enrage.</i>	Juro, āre, āvi, ātum, intr. <i>to swear.</i>
Is, ea, id, pro. <i>this ; he ; she ; it.</i>	Jus, juris, n. <i>right ; civil right ; jure, deservedly ; with reason.</i>
Isaācus, i, m. <i>Isaac.</i>	Jusjurandum, jusjurandi, n. <i>an oath.</i>
Isocrātes, is, m. <i>Isocrates.</i>	Justus, a, um, adj. <i>just ; right ; exact.</i>
Iste, ista, istud, pro. <i>that ; he ; she ; it.</i>	Juvat, imp. <i>it delights.</i>
Ita, adv. <i>so ; in such a manner ; thus.</i>	Juvenis, is, c. <i>a youth.</i>
Italia, æ, f. <i>Italy.</i>	Juvenis, e, adj. <i>young ; youthful.</i>
Itaque, adv. <i>and so ; therefore.</i>	Juvo, āre, juvi, jutum, tr. <i>to help ; to assist.</i>
Iter, itinēris, n. <i>a journey ; a road ; a rout.</i>	
Itērum, adv. <i>again ; a second time.</i>	

J.

Jaceo, ĕre, ui, intr. <i>to lie.</i>	
Jacōbus, i, m. <i>Jacob.</i>	
Jacto, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to throw ; to cast ; to hurl.</i>	
Jam, adv. <i>now.</i>	
Josēphus, i, m. <i>Joseph.</i>	
Juba, æ, <i>Juba ; and, the mane.</i>	

L.

Labiēnus, i, m. <i>Labienus.</i>	
Labor, ōris, m. <i>labor ; toil.</i>	
Lacrĭma, æ, f. <i>a tear.</i>	
Lacrymabilis, e, adj. <i>sad ; mournful.</i>	
Laudo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to praise ; to extol.</i>	
Laus, dis, f. <i>praise ; glory ; honor.</i>	
Lautus, a, um, adj. <i>clean ; neat ; splendid.</i>	
Lavo, āre, vi, lautum, lotum,	

- or lavātum, tr. to bathe ;
to wash.
- Legātus, i, m. an ambassa-
dor.
- Lego, ěre, legi, lectum, tr. to
choose ; to read.
- Lenio, ěre, ěvi, ětum. tr. to
soothe ; to assuage.
- Lenĭter, adv. gently ; kindly.
- Leo, ōnis, m. a lion.
- Levis, e, adj. light ; trivial ;
smooth.
- Levius, adv. more lightly.
- Lex, legis, f. law, meaning
statute or written law.
- Liber, bri, m. the inner bark
of a tree ; a book.
- Libĕri, ōrum, m. children.
- Libĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to
liberate ; to free.
- Libĕrus, a, um, adj. free.
- Licet, licuit, & licitum est,
imp. it is lawful ; licet
tibi, you may.
- Ligo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to
bind.
- Litĕra, æ, f. a letter ; pl. let-
ters ; literature ; an epistle.
- Locus, i, m. a place ; pl. loci
& loca ; m. & n.
- Locūtus, a, um. part. (lo-
quor.)
- Longè, adv. far.
- Longus, a, um, adj. long ;
lasting.
- Loquor, loqui, locūtus sum,
intr, dep. to speak ; to con-
verse.
- Luceo, ěre, luxi, intr. to
shine.
- Lucus, i, m. a grove ; a wood
consecrated.
- Luna, æ, f. the moon.
- Luo, ěre, i, luĭtum, tr. to ex-
piate ; to atone ; luĕre pœ-
nam, to suffer punishment.
- Lupus, i, m. a wolf.
- Lux, lucis, f. light.
- Lysander, dri, m. a Lacedæ-
monian general.

M.

- Macilentus, a, um, adj. lean ;
meagre.
- Magis, adv. more ; rather.
- Magister, tri, m. a master ; a
teacher.
- Magnificus, a, um, adj.
comp. irr., magnificent ;
grand.
- Magnitūdo, ĭnis, f. magni-
tude.
- Magnus, a, um, adj. grand ;
great.
- Major, us, ōris, adj. (comp. of
magnus,) greater ; the el-
der ; hence,
- Majōres, um, m. pl. forefa-
thers ; ancestors.
- Malè, adv. badly ; ill.
- Maledĭco, dicĕre, dixi, dic-
tum, tr. (malè & dico,) to
revile ; to rail at ; to re-
proach.
- Malo, malle, malui, tr. irr. to
prefer ; to be more willing ;
to wish.
- Malum, i, n. an apple ; evil.
- Malus, a, um, adj. (pejor, pes-

simus,) <i>bad; wicked</i> : mali, <i>wicked men</i> .	Memor, ōris, adj. <i>mindful</i> .
Manasses, is, m. <i>Manasseh</i> .	Memoria, æ, f. <i>memory</i> .
Mandatum, i, n. <i>a command; a charge</i> .	Mens, tis, f. <i>the mind; the understanding</i> .
Mando, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to command; to commit</i> .	Mentio, ōnis, f. <i>a mention</i> .
Manè, adv. <i>early in the morning</i> .	Mercātor, ōris, m. <i>a merchant; a trader</i> .
Maneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, intr. <i>to remain</i> .	Mercor, -āri, ātus sum, tr. <i>dēp. to purchase</i> .
Manifestus, a, um, adj. <i>manifest; clear</i> .	Mereor, ēri, meritus sum, tr. et intr. <i>to merit; to deserve; to earn</i> .
Manipulus, i, m. <i>a sheaf</i> .	Meritō, adv. <i>with good reason; deservedly</i> .
Manus, ūs, f. <i>a hand; a band</i> .	Meritum, i, n. <i>merit; desert</i> .
Mare, is, n. <i>the sea</i> , (in general.)	Metuo, ēre, ui, tr. et intr. <i>to fear; from</i>
Mario, ōnis, m. <i>Mario</i> .	Metus, ūs, m. <i>fear</i> .
Mater, tris, f. <i>a mother; a matron</i> .	Meus, a, um, pro. <i>my; mine</i> .
Materfamilias, trisfamilias, f. irr. <i>the mistress of a family</i> .	Miles, itis, c. <i>a soldier; the soldiery</i> .
Materia, æ, f. <i>a material; stuff; matter</i> .	Mille, num. adj. ind. <i>a thousand</i> : milia, um, pl.
Maturesco, escēre, ui, intr. <i>to ripen</i> .	Minim⁹, adv. <i>by no means</i> .
Maximus, a, um, adj. (sup. of magnus,) <i>very great; the greatest; chief</i> .	Minimus, a, um, adj. (sup. of parvus,) <i>the least; the smallest</i> .
Medicus, i, m. <i>a physician</i> .	Minister, tri, m. <i>a servant; an attendant</i> .
Meditor, āri, ātus sum, intr. <i>dep. to meditate</i> .	Min⁹s, adv. <i>less</i> : quò min⁹s, <i>that—not</i> .
Medius, a, um, adj. <i>the middle; midst</i> .	Mirandus, a, um, part. (from miror,) <i>wonderful</i> .
Meipsum, <i>me myself</i> .	Miror, āri, ātus sum, tr. <i>dep. to wonder at; to admire</i> .
Mel, lis, n. <i>honey</i> .	Mirus, a, um, adj. <i>wonderful; surprising</i> .
Melior, us, adj. (comp. of bonus,) <i>better</i> .	Misceo, ēre, miscui, mistum,
Memini, def. pret. <i>I remember; I relate</i> .	

& mixtum, tr. to mingle ; to mix.	fine ; to punish.
Misereor, ĕri, erĭtus, or ertus sum, tr. dep. to pity.	Mulier, ĕris, f. a woman.
Mitis, e, adj. mild ; kind ; humane.	Multiŭdo, inis, f. a multi- tude.
Mitto, ĕre, misi, missum, tr. to send ; to throw.	Multus, a, um, adj. many.
Modestus, a, um, adj. modest.	Mundus, i, m. the world ; the universe.
Mœnia, um, n. pl. the walls of a city ; fortifications.	Munio, ĭre, ĭvi, ĭtum, tr. to fortify.
Mæreo, ĕre, ui, intr. to mourn ; to grieve.	Munus, ĕris, n. a gift ; an office ; a reward.
Mæror, ōris, m. sorrow.	Murus, i, m. a wall.
Mæstitia, æ, f. sadness ; mourning.	Mus, muris, m. & f a mouse.
Mollis, e, adj. soft ; tender.	N.
Mollius, adv. more tender.	Nam, conj. for ; but.
Moneo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, tr. to warn ; to admonish ; to advise.	Narro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to relate ; to narrate.
Mons, tis, m. a mountain.	Nascor, nasci, natus sum, intr. dep. to be born ; to grow.
Monstrum, i, n. a monster.	Natālis, e, adj. natal : dies natālis, a birthday.
Montānus, a, um, adj. moun- tainous.	Natūra, æ, f. nature ; crea- tion.
Montuōsus, a, um, adj. mountainous.	Natus, a, um, part. (nascor,) born.
Morbus, i, m. a disease.	Natus, i, m. a son.
Morior, mori, rarely morĭri, mortuus sum, intr. dep. to die.	Natu, (abl.) by birth.
Mors, tis, f. death.	Navis, is, f. a ship.
Mortuus, a, um, part. (mori- or,) dead.	Ne, conj. not ; lest ; lest that ; ne quidem, not even.
Mos, moris, m. a custom ; a manner.	Nec, or neque, conj. neither ; nor.
Moveo, ĕre, movi, motum, tr. to move ; to excite.	Necdum, adv. nor yet ; not as yet.
Mox, adv. soon ; by and by.	Necesse, adj. ind. necessary.
Mulcto, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to	Necessitas, ātis, f. neces- sity.

Nego, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to deny ; to refuse.	Notus, a, um, adj. <i>known</i> .
Negotium, i, n. <i>business ; labor</i> .	Novem, num. adj. ind. <i>nine</i> .
Nemo, īnis, c. <i>no one ; no man : (non homo.)</i>	Novus, a, um, adj. <i>new ; fresh</i> .
Nepos, ōtis, m. <i>a grandson</i> .	Nox, noctis, f. <i>night</i> .
Nequāquam, adv. <i>by no means</i> .	Nullus, a, um, adj. gen. nullius, dat. nulli, <i>none ; no ; no one</i> .
Neque, conj. <i>neither ; nor ; not</i> .	Num, adv. interrog. <i>whether ?</i>
Nescio, īre, īvi, ītum, intr. to be ignorant of ; not to know : hence,	Numērus, i, m. <i>a number</i> .
Nescius, a, um, adj. <i>not knowing ; ignorant</i> .	Nummus, i, m. <i>money</i> .
Neuter, tra, trum, adj. <i>neither of the two ; neither</i> .	Nunc, adv. <i>now ; nunc etiam, now even ; still</i> .
Nidus, i, m. <i>a nest</i> .	Nuncio, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to announce ; to tell.
Nihil & nil, ind. n. <i>nothing</i> .	Nuncius, i, m. <i>a messenger</i> .
Nilus, i, m. <i>the Nile</i> .	Nunquam, adv. <i>never</i> .
Nimum, adv. <i>too much</i> .	Nutus, ūs, m. <i>a nod ; will</i> .
Nimius, a, um, adj. <i>too much ; too great</i> .	Nympha, æ, f. <i>a nymph</i> .
Nisi, conj. <i>unless ; except ; if not</i> .	
Nobilis, e, adj. <i>noble ; known ; noted</i> .	O.
Nocens, tis, part. (noceo,) <i>injuring</i> .	Ob, prep. <i>on account of</i> .
Noctu, abl. sing. monoptote, <i>by night</i> .	Obeo, īre, īvi or ii, ītum, tr. & intr. irr. <i>to go to ; to execute ; to die</i> .
Nolo, nolle, nolui, intr. irr. to be unwilling : noli facere, <i>do not</i> .	Obliviscor, i, oblītus sum, tr. dep. <i>to forget</i> .
Nomen, īnis, n. <i>a name</i> .	Obsecro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to beseech.
Non, adv. <i>not</i> .	Obses, īdis, m. & f. <i>a hostage</i> .
Nonne, adv. <i>not ? a negative interrogative</i> .	Obsideo, ěre, sēdi, sessum, tr. <i>to besiege ; to invest</i> .
Noster, tra, trum, pro. <i>our</i> .	Obstupesco, esēre, ui, intr. to be astonished.
	Obtestor, āri, ātus sum, tr. dep. <i>to call to witness ; to beseech</i> .
	Obvenio, īre, ēni, entum, intr. <i>to meet</i> .

Obviām, adv. <i>in the way.</i>	Orbus, a, um, adj. <i>destitute.</i>
Occīdō, ěre, cīdi, cīsum, tr. (ob & cædo,) <i>to kill ; to slay.</i>	Origo, īnis, f. <i>origin ; source.</i>
Ocūlus, i, m. <i>an eye.</i>	Oro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to beg ; to entreat.</i>
Odi, odisse, def. pret. <i>to hate.</i>	Os, oris, n. <i>the mouth ; the face.</i>
Odium, i, n. <i>hatred ; odium.</i>	Os, ossis, n. <i>a bone.</i>
Offĕro, ferre, obtūli, oblātum, tr. <i>to offer ; to present.</i>	Oscūlor, āri, ātus sum, tr. <i>dep. to kiss.</i>
Olim, adv. <i>formerly ; hereafter.</i>	Ovum, i, n. <i>an egg.</i>
Omnis, e, adj. <i>all ; every : omnia, all things.</i>	
Onĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to load.</i>	P.
Oppĕrior, perīri, pertus sum, tr. <i>to wait for.</i>	Pabūlum, i, n. <i>fodder.</i>
Oppĭdum, i, n, <i>a walled town.</i>	Pallium, i, n. <i>a cloak.</i>
Opprīmo, ěre, pressi, pressum, tr. <i>to oppress ; to press down.</i>	Palmes, ītis, m. <i>a bough ; a twig.</i>
Ops, (nom. not in use,) opis, gen. f. <i>aid ; help : opes, pl. resources ; riches.</i>	Palus, ūdis, fem. <i>a marsh.</i>
Optimus, a, um, adj. sup. (bonus,) <i>the best ; most worthy.</i>	Palus, i, m. <i>a whipping post.</i>
Opŭlens, tis, adj. <i>wealthy ; opulent.</i>	Parco, ěre, peperci or parsi, parsum or parcitum, intr. <i>to spare.</i>
Opus, ěris, n. <i>a work ; a task.</i>	Parens, tis, c. <i>a parent.</i>
Ora, æ, f. <i>a coast ; shore.</i>	Pareo, ěre, ui, itum, intr. <i>to obey.</i>
Oratio, ōnis, f. <i>an oration ; a discourse.</i>	Pario, ěre, pepĕri, partum, tr. <i>to bear ; to bring forth ; to produce.</i>
Orātor, ōris, m. <i>an orator.</i>	Paro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to prepare ; to provide.</i>
Orbis, is, m. <i>an orb ; a circle.</i>	Pars, tis, f. <i>a part.</i>
	Parum, adv. (minŭs, minīmĕ,) <i>little ; too little.</i>
	Parumper, adv. <i>a little while.</i>
	Parvŭlus, a, um, adj. dim. <i>a very small child.</i>
	Parvus, a, um, adj. <i>small.</i>
	Pasco, ěre, pavi, pastum, tr. & intr. <i>to give food to ; to graze.</i>

- Pascor, i, pastus sum, tr. & intr. dep. *to feed*.
 Passus, ūs, m. *a pace*, (5 feet.)
 Pastor, ōris, m. *a shepherd*.
 Pater, tris, m. *a father*.
 Patior, pati, passus sum, tr. dep. *to suffer*.
 Patria, æ, f. *one's native country*.
 Paulatim, adv. *gradually*.
 Pauper, ēris, adj. *poor*.
 Pax, pacis, f. *peace*.
 Peccātum, i, n. *sin*; *wickedness*.
 Pecco, āre, āvi, ātum, intr. *to do wrong*; *to sin*.
 Pectus, ōris, n. *the breast*.
 Pecunia, æ, f. *money*.
 Pecus, ōris, *a herd*; *cattle*.
 Pedes, itis, c. *a foot-soldier*.
 Pejor, comp. of malus, *worse*.
 Pellicio, licēre, lexi, lectum, *to allure*; *to entice*.
 Pellis, is, f. *the skin*.
 Peninsŭla, æ, f. *a peninsula*.
 Penna, æ, f. *a feather*; *a pen*.
 Per, prep. *by*; *through*; *along*.
 Perāgo, agēre, ēgi, actum, tr. *to finish*; *to perfect*.
 Percontor & cunctor, āri, ātus sum, tr. dep. *to ask*; *to inquire*.
 Percussus, part. (percutio.)
 Percutio, cutēre, cussi, cussus, tr. *to strike*; *to wound*.
 Perfēro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, tr. irr. *to endure*.
 Perficio, ěre, fēcī, factum, tr. *to finish*; *to accomplish*.
 Pergāma, ōrum, n. pl. *the citadel of Troy*: from Pergamum.
 Pergo, pergēre, perrexī, perfectum, intr. *to advance*; *to continue*.
 Pericŭlum, i, n. *danger*; *hazard*.
 Perlābor, lābi, lapsus sum, tr. dep. *to glide through*, *or along*.
 Perlustro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. *to survey*.
 Permitto, mittēre, mīsi, missus, tr. *to permit*; *to intrust*.
 Permiltus, a, um, adj. *very many*.
 Persæ, ārum, f. pl. *the Persians*.
 Persēquor, sēqui, secŭtus sum, tr. dep. *to follow closely*; *to pursue*.
 Perspicio, spicēre, spexī, spectrum, tr. *to see through*; *to discern*.
 Persuadeo, suadēre, suāsi, suāsum, tr. *to persuade*.
 Perturbo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. *to trouble*; *to disturb*.
 Pervenio, venīre, vēni, ventum, intr. *to arrive at*; *to reach*.
 Pes, pedis, m. *a foot*.
 Pessimus, sup. of malus, (which see,) *worst*.
 Pestis, is, f. *a pest*; *destruction*.

Peto, petĕre, petĭvi, petĭtum, tr. <i>to seek ; to ask ; to at-</i> <i>tack.</i>	Porrĭgo, rigĕre, rexi, rectum, tr. <i>to extend ; to offer.</i>
Phalanx, angis, f. <i>a phalanx.</i>	Porro, adv. <i>moreover.</i>
Pharao, ōnis, m. <i>Pharaoh,</i>	Porta, æ. f. <i>a gate.</i>
Philippus, i, m. <i>King of Ma-</i> <i>cedon.</i>	Portendo, tendĕre, tendi, ten- tum, tr. <i>to portend ; to pre-</i> <i>sage.</i>
Phœnix, ĭcis, <i>a Phœnician.</i>	Porto, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to</i> <i>carry.</i>
Pietas, ātis, f. <i>piety.</i>	Posĭtus, part. (pono.)
Pincerna, æ, m. <i>a butler.</i>	Possum, posse, potui, intr. irr. <i>to be able ; I can.</i>
Pinguis, e, adj. <i>fat ; rich.</i>	Post, prep. <i>after</i> : adv. <i>after ;</i> <i>after that.</i>
Pistor, ōris, m. <i>a baker.</i>	Postea, adv. <i>afterwards.</i>
Pius, a, um, adj. <i>pious ;</i> <i>good.</i>	Postquam, adv. <i>after ; after</i> <i>that.</i>
Placeo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum intr. <i>to</i> <i>please.</i>	Postŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to</i> <i>ask for ; to demand.</i>
Placet, placuit imp. <i>it plea-</i> <i>ses.</i>	Potestas, ātis, f. <i>power (civil,</i> <i>imperium, military.)</i>
Placĭdĕ, adv. <i>placidly ; qui-</i> <i>etly.</i>	Potiŭs, adv. <i>rather.</i>
Plactus, ūs, m. <i>a shrieking ;</i> <i>a mourning.</i>	Præ, prep. <i>before ; for ; in</i> <i>comparison with.</i>
Plaustrum, i, n. <i>a cart ; a</i> <i>wagon.</i>	Præbeo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, tr. <i>to</i> <i>offer ; to supply.</i>
Plenus, a, um, adj. <i>full ;</i> <i>large.</i>	Præcipio, cipĕre, cĕpi, cep- tum, tr. <i>to take before ; to</i> <i>command.</i>
Plerŭmque, adv. <i>commonly ;</i> <i>generally,</i>	Præda, æ, f. <i>prey ; booty.</i>
Plurĭmus, sup. of multus, (which see,) <i>very many.</i>	Prædico, dicĕre, dixi, dictum, tr. <i>to declare ; to publish.</i>
Pœna, æ, f. <i>punishment.</i>	Præfectus, i, m. <i>a chief offi-</i> <i>cer ; a præfect.</i>
Poëta, æ, m. <i>a poet.</i>	Præficio, ficĕre, fĕci, fectum, tr. <i>to set over.</i>
Pollux, ūcis, m. <i>a son of Le-</i> <i>da.</i>	Præmitto, mittĕre, mĭsi, mis- sum, tr. <i>to send before.</i>
Pompeius, i, m. <i>Pompey.</i>	Præmium, i, n. <i>a reward ; a</i> <i>price.</i>
Pomum, i, n. <i>an apple.</i>	
Pono, ponĕre, posui, posĭtum. tr. <i>to place ; to put.</i>	
Popŭlus, i, m. <i>the people ; pl.</i> <i>nations</i>	

Prænosco, noscēre, nōvi, nō- tum, tr. <i>to foreknow.</i>	Procer, ĕris, adj. procĕres, pl. chiefs.
Præscio, ĭre, ĭvi, ĭtum, tr. <i>to know beforehand.</i>	Procul, adv. <i>far.</i>
Præsens, tis, adj. <i>present; im- minent.</i>	Profĕro, ferre, tūli, lātum, tr. irr. <i>to bring forward; to produce.</i>
Præsertim, adv. <i>especially.</i>	Profiscor, ficisci, fectus sum, intr. dep. <i>to depart.</i>
Præsidium, i, n. <i>a defence; a garrison.</i>	Progressus, ūs, m. <i>progress.</i>
Præsum, esse, fui, intr. irr. <i>to be over; to rule over.</i>	Prohibeo, hibĕre, hibui, hi- bitum, tr. <i>to hinder; to prohibit.</i>
Prætereo, ĭre, ĭvi and ii, ĭtum, tr. irr. <i>to go beyond; to omit.</i>	Projicio, ĕre, jĕci, jectum, tr. <i>to throw.</i>
Præter, prep. <i>besides; ex- cept.</i>	Promitto, mittĕre, mīsi, mis- sum, tr. <i>to let go; to send forward.</i>
Preces, precum, pl. f. <i>pray- ers.</i>	Pronus, a, um, adj. <i>inclined; bending forward.</i>
Precor, āri, ātus sum, tr. dep. <i>to pray; to entreat.</i>	Propĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, intr. <i>to hasten.</i>
Premo, premĕre, pressi, pressum, tr. <i>to press; to urge.</i>	Propior, us, adj. comp. (sup. proximus,) <i>nearer.</i>
Pretium, i, n. <i>a price; a re- ward.</i>	Propitius, a, um, adj. <i>favora- ble; kind.</i>
Primò, adv. <i>at first.</i>	Propiùs, adv. <i>nearer.</i>
Primus, a, um, adj. sup. (pri- or,) <i>first.</i>	Propositum, i, n. <i>proposition.</i>
Princeps, cĭpis, adj. <i>the chief; sub. a prince.</i>	Prosper & prospĕrus, a, um, adj. <i>prosperous; lucky.</i>
Prior, us, adj. (sup. primus,) <i>the former; first.</i>	Prospĕrĕ, adv. <i>prosperously.</i>
Pristĭnus, a, um, adj. <i>ancient; wonted.</i>	Prosum, prodesse, fui, intr. irr. <i>to profit; to do good.</i>
Pro, prep. <i>for; instead of.</i>	Protĕgo, tegĕre, texi, tectum, tr. <i>to protect.</i>
Probo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to prove.</i>	Providentia, æ, f. <i>providence.</i>
Procĕdo, cedĕre, cessi, ces- sum, intr. <i>to proceed; to advance.</i>	Provincia, æ, f. <i>a province.</i>
	Proximus, a, um, adj. (pro- pior,) <i>nearest; next.</i>
	Prudens, tis, adj. <i>prudent; wise.</i>

Prudentia, æ, f. *prudence*.
 Publicus, a, um, adj. *public*.
 Puer, eri, m. *a boy*.
 Pugna, æ, f. *a battle; close fight*.
 Pulcher, chra, chrum, adj. *fair; beautiful; glorious*.
 Punio, ire, ïvi, ïtum, tr. *to punish*.
 Purgo, âre, âvi, âtum, tr. *to purify; to excuse*.
 Puteus, i, m. *a well; a pit*.
 Putiphar, âris, m. *Potiphar*.
 Puto, âre, âvi, âtum, tr. *to think*.

Q.

Quadrupes, pëdis, adj. *four-footed; a quadruped*.
 Quatuor, num. adj. pl. ind. *four*.
 Quæstor, ôris, m. *a quæstor*.
 Quare, adv. *wherefore*.
 Quasi, adv. *as if; as*.
 Quàm, conj. & adv. *as; how*.
 Quamobrem, adv. *wherefore*.
 Quercus, ûs, f. *an oak tree*.
 Que, conj. *and; also*.
 Queror, queri, questus sum, tr. dep. *to complain*.
 Qui, quæ, quod, rel. pro. *who; which; what*: inter. *who?*
 Quia, conj. *because*.
 Quid, *how; why*.
 Quidam, quædam, quoddam, adj. pro. *a certain*, (vir.)
 Quies, êtis, f. *quiet*.
 Quin, conj. *but; if*.

Quinque, num. adj. pl. ind. *five*.
 Quintuplò, adv. *five-fold*.
 Quis, quæ, quod, or quid, inter. pro. *who; what?*
 quid, *why?*
 Quisnam, quænam, quodnam, or quidnam, pro. *who; what*.
 Quisquam, quæquam, quodquam, quidquam, or quicquam, pro. *any one*.
 Quisque, quæque, quodque, or quidque, pro. *each; every*.
 Quò, adv. *whither; that*.
 Quondam, adv. *formerly; once*.
 Quorsum, adv. *whitherward*.
 Quomòdo, adv. *how*.
 Quod, conj. *that; because*.
 Quoniam, conj. *since; because*.
 Quoque, conj. *also*.
 Quum, or cùm adv. *when*: conj. *since*.

R.

Rapidus, a, um, adj. *rapid; swift*.
 Ratio, ônis, f. *a reason; manner*.
 Recëdo, cedëre, cessi, cessum, intr. *to recede; to yield*.
 Recido, cedëre, cidi, intr. *to fall back*.
 Recipio, cepëre, cëpi, ceptum, tr. *to take back; to receive; to recover*.

Recondo, ěre, i, ĭtum, <i>to lay up ; to conceal.</i>	Reperio, ĭre, i, tum, <i>tr. to discover ; to find.</i>
Rectè, <i>adv. rightly.</i>	Repōno, ponĕre, posui, posĭtum, <i>tr. to replace ; to restore.</i>
Rectus, a um, <i>adj. upright.</i>	Reporto, āre, āvi, ātum, <i>tr. to bring back ; to gain.</i>
Recordor, āri, ātus sum, <i>intr. dep. to remember ; to recollect.</i>	Res, ei, <i>f. a thing ; an affair ; a kingdom.</i>
Reddo, dĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, <i>tr. to give back ; to render ; to restore.</i>	Reservo, āre, āvi, ātum, <i>to keep back ; to reserve ; to preserve.</i>
Redeo, ĭre, ii, ĭtum, <i>intr. irr. to go back ; to return.</i>	Resĭdeo, ěre, sĕdi, sessum, <i>intr. to settle ; to remain.</i>
Redūco, ducĕre, duxi, duc-tum, <i>tr. to reconcile ; to lead back.</i>	Resisto, sistĕre, stĭti, stĭtum, <i>intr. to resist.</i>
Refĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, <i>tr. irr. to bring back.</i>	Respondeo, spondĕre, spondi, sponsum, <i>tr. to respond ; to answer.</i>
Regio, ōnis, <i>f. a region.</i>	Respublica, reipublicæ, <i>f. the state ; the republic.</i>
Rego, regĕre, rexi, rectum, <i>tr. to rule ; to direct.</i>	Restituo, stituĕre, stitui, sti-tŭtum, <i>tr. to set up again ; to restore.</i>
Regnum, i, <i>n. a kingdom ; rule ; government.</i>	Retineo, tinĕre, tinui, ten-tum, <i>tr. to hold back ; to retain.</i>
Regredior, grĕdi, gressus sum, <i>intr. dep. to turn back ; to return.</i>	Reuben, <i>m. Reuben.</i>
Reipsa, <i>adv. in very deed.</i>	Reverto, ěre, i, sum, <i>intr. to return.</i>
Relinquo, linguĕre, lĭqui, lic-tum, <i>tr. to leave behind ; to abandon.</i>	Revōco, āre, āvi, ātum, <i>tr. to call back.</i>
Remaneo, manĕre, mansi, mansum, <i>intr. to remain behind.</i>	Rex, regis, <i>m. a king.</i>
Remitto, mittĕre, mĭsi, mis-sum, <i>tr. to send back.</i>	Ripa, æ, <i>f. a bank.</i>
Renōvo, āre, āvi, ātum, <i>tr. to make anew ; to renovate.</i>	Rivus, i, <i>m. a river ; a creek.</i>
Rependo, pendĕre, pendi, pensum, <i>tr. to recompense ; to pay back.</i>	Rixor, āri, atus sum, <i>intr. dep. to quarrel.</i>
	Robur, ōris, <i>n. hard oak . hence, strength.</i>

Rogo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to ask ; to request.	Scindo, ěre, scidi, scissum, tr. to rend ; to cut.
Roma, æ, f. <i>Rome</i> .	Scipio, ōnis, m. <i>Scipio</i> .
Romānus, i, m. <i>a Roman</i> .	Sciscitor, āri, ātus sum, tr. dep. to inquire ; to ask.
Rota, æ, f. <i>a wheel</i> .	Scribo, scribĕre, scripsi, scriptum, tr. to write.
Ruo, ěre, ui, uĭtum, intr. & tr. to rush ; to fall ; to throw down.	Scrutor, tārī, tātus sum, tr. dep. to search into.
Rupes, is, f. <i>a rock ; a cliff</i> .	Scyphus, i, m. <i>a cup</i> .
Rursus, adv. <i>again</i> .	Secundò, adv. <i>a second time</i> .
Rus, ruris, n. <i>the country ; a farm</i> .	Secundus, a, um, adj. <i>the second ; prosperous ; favorable</i> .

S.

Sabīni, ōrum, m. <i>the Sabines</i> .	Secūris, is, f. <i>an axe</i> .
Saccus, i, m. <i>a sack</i> .	Secūrus, a, um, adj. <i>secure ; safe</i> .
Sæpe, adv. <i>often ; frequently</i> .	Sed, conj. <i>but</i> .
Sævio, ĭre, ii, ĭtum, intr. to rage ; to be cruel.	Sedile, is, n. <i>a seat</i> .
Salus, ūtis, f. <i>safety</i> .	Semel, adv. <i>once</i> .
Salūto, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to salute.	Semper, adv. <i>always</i> .
Salvus, a, um, adj. <i>safe</i> .	Senātus, ūs, m. <i>a senate</i> , (from senex.)
Sanus, a, um, adj. <i>sane ; sound</i> .	Senectus, ūtis, f. <i>old age</i> .
Sanguis, ĭnis, m. <i>blood</i> .	Senex, senĭcis, and senis, c. <i>an old man, or woman</i> .
Sapiens, tis, adj. <i>wise</i> .	Sepelio, pelire, pelivi, pul-tum, tr. to bury ; to inter.
Sapienter, adv. <i>wisely</i> .	Septem, num. adj. ind. pl. <i>seven</i> .
Satis, adv. <i>enough ; sufficient-ly ; also used as adj</i> .	Sepulcrum, i, n. <i>a sepulchre</i> .
Saxum, i, n. <i>a rock ; a stone</i> .	Sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, tr. dep. to follow ; to pursue.
Scala, æ, f. <i>a ladder ; a stair</i> .	Series, ěi, f. <i>a series</i> .
Scelestus, a, um, adj. <i>wicked ; unlucky</i> .	Sermo, ōnis, m. <i>a speech ; a discourse</i> .
Scelus, ěris, n. <i>wickedness</i> ;	Serpens, tis, c. <i>a serpent</i> .
Schola, æ, f. <i>a school</i> .	Servitus, ūtis, f. <i>slavery ; bondage</i> .
Scilicet, adv. <i>forsooth ; truly</i> .	
Scio, ĭre, ĭvi, ĭtum, intr. to know.	

Servo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to	Sopio, īre, īvi, ītum, tr. to
<i>preserve ; to guard.</i>	<i>quiet ; to bury.</i>
Servus, i, m. a slave.	Sors, tis, f. a lot.
Si, conj. if.	Sparta, æ, f. Sparta, capital
Sic, adv. so ; thus.	<i>of Laconia.</i>
Sidus, ěris, n. a star.	Species, ěi, f. appearance,
Significo, āre, āvi, ātum, tr.	<i>aspect.</i>
<i>to signify ; to mark.</i>	Specto, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. to
Signum, i, n. a sign.	<i>look at ; to behold.</i>
Simeon, ōnis, m. Simeon.	Spectacŭlum, i, n. a specta-
Similis, e, adj. similar ;	<i>cle ; a sight.</i>
<i>like.</i>	Spelunca, æ, f. a cave.
Simonides, is, m. a Greek	Spero, āre, āvi, ātum, intr. to
<i>poet.</i>	<i>hope ; to expect.</i>
Simul, adv. at the same time:	Spes, ěi, f. hope ; expecta-
<i>simul—simul, as soon as.</i>	<i>tion.</i>
Sine, prep. without.	Spica, æ, f. an ear of corn.
Sinister, tra, trum, adj. left ;	Splendĭdus, a, um, adj. splen-
<i>unlucky.</i>	<i>did ; illustrious.</i>
Sino, sinĕre, sivi, situm, tr.	Spondeo, spondĕre, spon-
<i>to permit.</i>	<i>di, sponsum, tr. to promise.</i>
Sitis, is, f. thirst.	Statim, adv. immediately.
Socius, i, m. a companion ;	Statuo, uĕre, ui, ātum, tr. to
<i>an ally.</i>	<i>set up ; to resolve.</i>
Sol, solis, m. the sun.	Stella, æ, f. a star.
Solatium, i, n. a solace.	Sterno, sternĕre, stravi, stra-
Soleo, ěre, solĭtus sum, n.	<i>tum, tr. to prostrate ; to</i>
<i>pass. to be accustomed.</i>	<i>throw down.</i>
Solium, i, n. a throne.	Stipŭla, æ, f. stubble ; straw.
Solus, a, um, adj. alone ; on-	Sto, stāre, stĕti, stātum, intr.
<i>ly ; solitary.</i>	<i>to stand.</i>
Solvo, solvĕre, solvi, solŭ-	Studiŭsus, a, um, adj. eager ;
<i>tum, tr. to loose ; to free.</i>	<i>studious.</i>
Somniator, ōris, m. a dream.	Stultus, a, um, adj. foolish.
Somnio, āre, āvi, ātum, intr.	Suadeo, suadĕre, suasi, sua-
<i>to dream.</i>	<i>sum, tr. & intr. to advise ;</i>
Somnium, i, n. a dream.	<i>to persuade.</i>
Somnus, i, m. sleep.	Sub, prep. under ; near to.
Sonŏrus, a, um, roaring ;	Subjicio, jicĕre, jĕci, jectum,
<i>loud-sounding.</i>	<i>tr. to cast under ; to submit</i>

Sublimis, e, adj. <i>sublime</i> ; on high : in sublime, aloft.	Suspendo, pendere, pendi, pensum, tr. to suspend ; to hang.
Subripio, ere, ui, reptum, tr. to take away.	Sustineo, ere, ui, tentum, tr. to sustain.
Subsidium, i, n. aid.	Suus, a, um, pro. his ; hers ; its.
Subtraho, trahere, traxi, trac- tum, to draw out ; to di- minish.	Sylva, æ, f. a forest.
Succedo, cedere, cessi, ces- sum, intr. to succeed.	
Sucresco, ere, crevi, cretum, intr. to grow.	
Sui, pro. gen. of himself, her- self, itself.	
Sulla, æ, m. Sylla.	
Sum, esse, fui, intr. irr. to be ; to exist.	
Sumo, sumere, sumpsi, sumptum, tr. to take.	
Super, prep. above ; upon.	
Superbia, æ, f. pride ; haugh- tiness.	
Supellex, lectilis, f. furni- ture ; household goods.	
Superior, ius, comp. of supē- rus.	
Superstes, stitis, adj. surviv- ing.	
Supersum, esse, fui, int. irr. to be over ? to remain ; to survive.	
Supērus, a, um, adj. (superi- or, suprēmus, or summus,) above ; high.	
Suppedito, are, avi, atum, tr. to supply ; to furnish.	
Surgo, surgere, surrexi, sur- rectum, intr. to rise.	
Suscito, are, avi, atum, tr. to kindle.	
	T.
	Tædet, tæduit, imp. to be weary of.
	Tacitus, a, um, adj. silent ; quiet.
	Talentum, i, n. a talent.
	Tamen, conj. yet ; neverthe- less.
	Tandem, adv. at length.
	Tanquam, adv. as if ; as well as.
	Tantopere, adv. so much.
	Tantus, a, um, adj. so great ; such : tanti, of so much va- lue.
	Tarquinius, i, m. Tarquin.
	Tego, ere, texi, tectum, tr. to cover.
	Telum, i, n. a dart ; a wea- pon.
	Tempestas, âtis, f. a storm ; a tempest.
	Tempus, ôris, n. time ; a sea- son.
	Teneo, ere, ui, tum, tr. to hold ; to have ; to possess.
	Tener, era, erum, adj. ten- der ; young.
	Terra, æ, f. the earth ; a country.

Tertius, a, um, adj. ord. <i>the third.</i>	Tribūnus, i, m. <i>a tribune.</i>
Testor, āri, ātus sum, tr. dep. <i>to bear witness ; to call to witness.</i>	Triennium, i, n. <i>t. e space of three years.</i>
Teucri, ōrum, m. pl. <i>Trojans.</i>	Triginta, num. adj. pl. ind. <i>thirty.</i>
Thebānus, i, m. <i>a Theban :</i> sometimes an adj.	Tristis, e, adj. <i>sad ; sorrowful.</i>
Thessalonica, æ, f. <i>the metropolis of Macedon. •</i>	Trīticum, i, n. <i>wheat.</i>
Timeo, ēre, ui, intr. & tr. <i>to fear ; to dread.</i>	Trucido, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to kill ; to butcher.</i>
Timor, ōris, m. <i>fear.</i>	Tu, tui, pro. <i>thou.</i>
Tingo, tingēre, tinxī, tinctum, tr. <i>to dye ; to stain.</i>	Tum, adv. <i>then ; and : tum —tum, both—and.</i>
Toga, æ, f. <i>a gown.</i>	Tumulus, i, n. <i>a mound ; a tomb.</i>
Tolēro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to bear ; to endure.</i>	Tunc, adv. <i>then.</i>
Totīdem, ind. adj. <i>the same number ; as many.</i>	Turba, æ, f. <i>a crowd ; a multitude ; a band.</i>
Torquis, is, d. <i>a collar ; a chain.</i>	Tutus, a, um, adj. <i>safe.</i>
Totus, a, um, adj. <i>whole ; entire ; all.</i>	Tuus, a, um, adj. pro. <i>thy ; thine.</i>
Trado, ēre, īdi, itum, tr. <i>to give up.</i>	
Traho, trahēre, traxi, tractum, tr. <i>to draw ; to drag.</i>	
Trano, or transno, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to swim over.</i>	
Trans, prep. <i>over ; beyond.</i>	
Transeō, īre, ii, itum, intr. irr. <i>to pass over.</i>	
Transfēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, tr. irr. <i>to transfer ; to carry over.</i>	
Tremo, tremēre, tremui, intr. <i>to tremble ; to shake.</i>	
Tres, tria, num. adj. pl. <i>three.</i>	
	U.
	Ubertas, ātis, f. <i>fertility ; fruitfulness.</i>
	Ubi, adv. <i>when ; where.</i>
	Ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, tr. dep. <i>to take revenge ; to avenge.</i>
	Ullus, a, um, adj. <i>any ; any one.</i>
	Ultimus, a, um, adj. (sup. of ulterior,) <i>the last.</i>
	Ultro, adv. <i>willingly ; of one's own accord.</i>
	Umbra, æ, f. <i>a shade ; a shadow.</i>
	Unda, æ, f. <i>a wave.</i>
	Unde, adv. <i>whence.</i>

Undĕcim, num. adj. pl. ind.	Vendo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, tr.
<i>eleven.</i>	<i>to sell.</i>
Unĭcĕ, adv. <i>singularly ; en-</i>	Venĕror, āri, ātus, tr. dep. <i>to</i>
<i>tirely.</i>	<i>worship ; to venerate.</i>
Universus, a, um, adj. <i>whole ;</i>	Venia, æ, f. <i>pardon ; permis-</i>
<i>universal.</i>	<i>sion.</i>
Unquam, adv. <i>ever.</i>	Venio, ĭre, vĕni, ventum, intr
Unus, a, um, adj. <i>one ; only ;</i>	<i>to come.</i>
<i>alone.</i>	Ventus i, m. <i>the wind.</i>
Unusquisque, unakuęque,	Verbum, i, n. <i>a word.</i>
&c. adj. <i>each one ; each.</i>	Veritas, ātis, f. <i>truth.</i>
Urbs, urbis, f. <i>a city.</i>	Verò, conj. <i>but : adv. tru-</i>
Ut, conj. <i>that ; so that : adv.</i>	<i>ly.</i>
<i>as soon as.</i>	Versicōlor, ōris, adj. <i>chang-</i>
Uterque, utrāque, utrumque,	<i>ing color.</i>
compound pro. <i>which ?</i>	Verum, i, n. <i>the truth : adv.</i>
Utor, uti, usus sum, intr. dep.	<i>truly.</i>
<i>to use.</i>	Vester, ra, rum, pro. <i>your.</i>
Uva, æ, f. <i>a grape ; a bunch</i>	Vestis, is, f. <i>a garment.</i>
<i>of grapes.</i>	Via, æ, f. <i>a way ; a course ;</i>
Uxor, ōris, f. <i>a wife.</i>	<i>a journey.</i>
V.	
Vacca, æ, f. <i>a cow.</i>	Video, ĕre, vĭdi, vĭsum, tr.
Vanus, a, um, adj. <i>vain ;</i>	<i>to see ; to behold.</i>
<i>foolish.</i>	Vidua, æ, f. <i>a widow.</i>
Vario, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to</i>	Viginti, num. adj. pl. ind.
<i>change ; to vary.</i>	<i>twenty.</i>
Varius, a, um, adj. <i>various ;</i>	Vinco, cĕre, vici, victum, tr.
<i>diverse.</i>	<i>to conquer.</i>
Vastus, a, um, adj. <i>waste ;</i>	Vir, viri, m. <i>a man.</i>
<i>vast ; wide.</i>	Virgilius, i, m. <i>Virgil.</i>
Vehementer, adv. <i>vehement-</i>	Virgo, ĭnis, f. <i>a virgin.</i>
<i>ly ; earnestly.</i>	Virgūla, æ, f. <i>a small rod.</i>
Veho, vehĕre, vxi, vectum,	Virtus, ūtis, f. <i>virtue ; valor ;</i>
tr. <i>to carry ; to convey.</i>	<i>power.</i>
Vel, conj. <i>or ; also : vel—</i>	Vis, vis, f. <i>strength ; power.</i>
<i>vel, either—or.</i>	Vita, æ, f. <i>life.</i>
Velut, adv. <i>as ; as if.</i>	Vitis, is, f. <i>a vine.</i>
	Vivo, ĕre, vixi, victum, intr. <i>to</i>
	<i>live.</i>
	Vix, adv. <i>scarcely.</i>

Vobiscum, (cum, vobis,) <i>with you.</i>	Vox, vocis, f. <i>a voice; a word.</i>
Voco, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to call; to invite.</i>	Vulgus, i, n. or m. <i>the common people; the populace.</i>
Volo, velle volui, tr. v. intr. <i>irr. to wis; to desire; to be willing.</i>	Vulnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, tr. <i>to wound.</i>
Voluptas, tatis, f. <i>pleasure.</i>	Vulpes, ĩs, f. <i>a fox.</i>
	Vultus, ũs, m. <i>the countenance; the expression.</i>

RECOMMENDATIONS.

The following letters are from gentlemen who have seen this work, in whole or in part, before publication.

Hamilton College, July 15, 1845.

MR. GEO. SPENCER.—Dear Sir—I have looked over a few pages of your "Latin Lessons," now in press, and I am satisfied—so far as one can be from a partial examination of the work—that it will form a valuable contribution to our stock of elementary books. It seems to be designed to be used as an introduction to Bullions' Latin Grammar, which is reported to be preferred at about forty chartered academies in this State. The want of an elementary work adapted to Bullions' System, must, therefore, be somewhat widely felt; and I doubt not that your manual of Latin Lessons, by its clearness and simplicity of arrangement and detail, will commend itself to all classical teachers, and especially to those who are in the habit of using Bullions' Latin Grammar.

I remain yours very truly.

EDWARD NORTH,

Professor of Languages in Hamilton College.

Union College, June, 10th, 1845.

I have examined Mr. Spencer's "Latin Lessons," and think them calculated to give more efficient aid in teaching the elements of the Latin language, than any other work of the kind I am acquainted with. To all teachers, and especially to those who use Dr. Bullions' Latin Grammar, I can cordially recommend this work.

WILLIAM KELLY,

*Principal of the Union College Grammar School,
and Tutor in Union College.*

Union College, June 8th, 1845.

I have not examined the "Latin Lessons" of Mr. Spencer; but my knowledge of their author, and of the principles on which he has constructed them, and my strong conviction that such a work is needed and will prove useful, embolden me to recommend them to the favorable consideration of the public.

ALONZO POTTER.

I have examined Mr. Spencer's Latin Lessons, introductory to my Latin Grammar. The arrangement is neat and attractive, the exercises interspersed simple, and the whole well adapted to

the capacity of such as begin the study of the Latin Language at an early age. Those teachers who are in the habit of using such an introductory work, I think will find this better adapted to their purpose than any other work of the kind with which I am acquainted.

P. BULLIONS.

Utica, April 10, 1845.

GEORGE SPENCER, Esq.—Dear Sir—I have, with some care, read the manuscript of your “Latin Lessons” as far as the verb. I am much pleased with the plan of your work, and I do not see that you have omitted any principle that would be very important to the beginner, or that you have introduced any that should not be studied most thoroughly.

The exercises after the paradigms are sufficient for illustration, and not so numerous as to embarrass the learner. I am especially pleased with the exercise of tracing English words to their Latin primitives, thus early in the course: it must have a valuable influence upon the scholarship of the student.

I am clearly of the opinion, that should you publish your little work, it will tend to diminish the difficulties of commencing the Latin, with young pupils, more than any work I have used; and that in studying it, the pupil will so well know what he is about as to be both pleased and profited.

I think it must prove acceptable to teachers who are well aware how difficult it is to make satisfactory progress in Latin after a careless beginning.

Whenever in my school I may have occasion to form a class of beginners in Latin, I shall certainly start them with your lessons, if published, and with great confidence in being able to bring out satisfactory results.

Yours truly,

O. ROOT,
*Prof. of Mathematics, and Principal of
Seneca Falls Academy.*

REPORT

On the Method of Teaching English Grammar, and on Text Books to the Superintendent of Common Schools in the State of New-York; By Ralph K. Finch, Esq., Deputy Superintendent of Common Schools, Steuben Co.—(Assembly Documents, No. 34 pp. 577-589.)

To the HON. SAMUEL YOUNG, Superintendent of Common Schools:

SIR—I have endeavored to perform the task assigned me, and beg leave to submit the following remarks on the method of teaching English grammar.

I have not the vanity to believe that the plan here recommended is the best that can be devised, but it is one that I have tested in the school room, and found eminently successful.

I am, sir, with sentiments of high esteem, your obt. servant,

R. K. FINCH,
Superintendent Common Schools, Steuben County

REMARKS ON THE METHOD OF TEACHING ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

In the study of English grammar, three things should be steadily kept in view. 1st. To acquire an accurate knowledge of the principles and facts of the science. 2d. To become prompt and expert in the application of these both in analysis and composition; and, 3d. By means of this to *educate* or train the mental faculties, in the most effectual and profitable manner. The first of these, in the beginning at least, is chiefly an exercise of the memory: the second, combines with this the exercise of the judgment or reasoning powers; and it is in the proper direction of these, that the skill of the teacher, aided by his text book, leading the pupil to think, to reason, and to arrive at conclusions by the use of his own faculties, is required to effect the third.

It may be proper here to notice a subject which has of late attracted the attention of the writer; it is the practice of committing accurately to memory, or by *rote*, as it is rather ungenerously called. The time has been, (and in many places still is) when teachers seemed to think their whole duty consisted in requiring their pupils to commit their text book to memory, to assign them their daily task, and hear them recite it off, parrot-like, and he who made fewest mistakes was the best scholar. I have known this process gone through, not only with English grammar, but with Kames, Smellie's Philosophy, and even Euclid, in some schools of high pretensions. Nothing could be more preposterous or useless; and such a mode of teaching has fallen under the just condemnation of all sensible men. But it appears to me that even sensible men are now misleading the public mind into the opposite extreme; which, though not so absurd, nor so injurious, is still an error, and has a pernicious influence on education. Grammar, and every thing else, many think should be taught by mere conversational lectures, without requiring any committing to memory on the part of the pupils. The result is, a great deal *seems* to be accomplished in little time. Grammar is taught in *six lessons*, without any effort on the part of the learner. If the teacher is skillful, the pupils, by being led to understand the subject, will be delighted, and suppose they have acquired a great

deal. But such acquisitions are like "morning clouds;" the pupils have scarcely left the teacher, when all is gone. The true method, it appears to me, is to combine the two. "*In medio tutissimus ibis.*"

The leading principles of grammar, (and every thing else,) should be fixed in the mind by being carefully committed to memory, and fixed there by repeated rehearsals, and wrought into the understanding by familiar illustrations and exercises. Even allowing pupils to give the *sense* of the rule, instead of the *ipsissima verba*, (the very words,) has a pernicious effect. For not only in that way does it fail, generally of being strictly accurate, but at every repetition it will be given differently, and thus in a short time will become uncertain, and (if I may use the expression) chaotic; whereas, if always repeated in the *same way*, the connexion of the words becomes so associated in the mind, and so firmly lodged, as to be always there, and always accurate. *Without this*, there may be a confused idea of the principle, or rule, and to be sure of it the text book must be at hand, and resorted to—*with it*, the principle is indelibly fixed in the mind, always present, always ready; so that in fact the *little labor* expended in committing accurately to memory, saves a *great deal of labor* and inconvenience afterwards.

It is obvious, if these views are correct, that for the attainment of the first object proposed in the division of my subject, the leading parts of a text book containing the facts and principles designed to be thoroughly committed to memory, should be brief, accurate, so expressed as to be easily understood, and retained in the memory, and so distinguished from the subordinate parts, by size of type, or otherwise as to be manifest on inspection, and moreover in this department should be neither defective nor redundant. To facilitate the second, copious and appropriate exercises should be furnished at every step. A grammar that does not furnish these, is essentially deficient as a text book. And to aid in the third, the subordinate parts of the book should contain illustrations and details, sufficient both for teacher and pupil, in developing and acquiring a knowledge of the minutiae of the subject, and in training the mind to habits of reflecting, reasoning and discriminating. If in the study of English grammar, any of these be neglected, the result will be a failure.

The study of English grammar, in common schools, should be commenced as soon as the pupil can read with some degree of ease and fluency—not sooner, and should be continued till the subject is completely mastered. No study seems better adapted to the capacities of children, at this stage, than this, as it calls into action, and improves the memory and reasoning faculties, by exercising them on subjects not too difficult to be comprehended. The science of language as a branch of education, is surely of equal importance with the study of geography or of arithmetic. As a means of disciplining the mind and improving the rational powers, it is far superior to the former, which is chiefly an exercise of the memory; and is at least equal to the latter: and yet the returns of the county superintendents for 1842, show an aggregate of about forty-one thousand studying geography, sixty-four thousand studying arithmetic, and only twenty-eight thousand studying grammar. This fact seems to show a want of attention to this important study which is proba-

bly owing to a general prejudice against the study, most people considering it mysterious, difficult and useless. It is however a prejudice only, and has its origin not in the character of the study, which, when properly conducted, is both easy and attractive; but, as I think, in the two following causes.

1st. It is owing partly to the character of the text books employed. These are for the most part, greatly defective in simplicity and proper adaptation to the capacity of youthful pupils. In many, the definitions, rules and leading facts are prolix, inaccurate and confused—not properly distinguished from subordinate matter, and expressed in language not easy to be understood. Some are so small and defective in parts as to be insufficient to direct to a full knowledge of the subject, and so destitute of appropriate exercises, as to render what they do contain nearly useless, unless followed by something more full and complete; and some are so large, complicated, and burdened with unnecessary details as to appal the beginner, and to render the prospect of his ever mastering the subject, nearly hopeless.

2d. This prejudice is owing, in no small degree, perhaps chiefly, to defective and injudicious modes of teaching.

Some teach, if teaching it may be called, by merely requiring the pupil to commit the text book to memory, without any explanations or illustrations being given, or any pains taken to ascertain whether the pupil understands what he studies or not—the teacher merely assigns the task and hears it recited.

What is studied in this way will never be well understood, as the memory will be incumbered with a mass of crude materials, the use and application of which the pupil has never learned. With such learning, it is impossible he should be either pleased or instructed.

Another error, is the neglect of repeated reviews; which are necessary to keep what has been learned fresh before the minds of the learners—they proceed onward, and it may be, are well taught as they go, but for want of reviewing, by the time they have got to the middle they have forgotten the beginning, and when they reach the end, but little more time is required to forget the whole. Comparatively few make use of exercises, in parsing or syntax, consequently no opportunity is afforded to apply the principles learned. This indeed must be the case, where text books are used, which do not supply them sufficiently, such as many of the compends now in use in our schools, which have been introduced on account of their cheapness. In parsing, many never exercise their judgment to distinguish one part of speech from another, but depend on the infirmation of others, or perhaps resort to a dictionary.

In all such indolent and mechanical processes, there is no teaching on the part of the teacher, and with much irksome toil there is but little learning on the part of the pupil. No wonder if under such a course of heartless and unprofitable labor, the study should be avoided and considered dry and uninteresting. A remedy for this evil is much needed, and it is in the power of the conscientious active and skilful teacher, aided by a good text book, to effect it. The following suggestions respecting the method of teaching English grammar, the result of much experience and observation. will.

it is believed, if carried out, go far to bring about a reformation so desirable in this branch of common school education.

In commencing the study of English grammar the first thing to be attended to is proper *classification*. When a school term commences, care should be taken, as far as possible, to have all the pupils up at the beginning, and arrangements made for their being kept steadily at school till its close. In some studies, such as reading, spelling, writing, and even geography, early and regular attendance, though exceedingly desirable, is not so indispensable; but in all studies in which subsequent parts cannot be understood without a knowledge of the preceding, unless the members of the class begin all together, and continue regular in their attendance, the loss to the delinquents will be very great, and no teacher ought to be held responsible for the progress of pupils whose attendance is greatly irregular. A pupil entering a class in English grammar, properly taught, a fortnight or even a week after it begins, will feel the loss to the end, and is in danger of being discouraged by that very disadvantage. The same will be the effect of partial attendance. For this reason, when a term opens, it would be wise to delay forming classes in English grammar, for a short time, and to give notice through the district that a class will be formed on such a day, and that it is important for all who intend to join it, to be present at the commencement. Pupils who have but little knowledge of the subject would do well to begin the course again, and to proceed regularly. The classes should be as few in number as possible; two in most schools will be sufficient.

The class being assembled, the teacher in a few remarks should explain the nature and importance of the study, intimating that if properly conducted it will prove to be both pleasing and profitable, and that a very respectable knowledge of it, which will be of great use in after life, may be attained without a great deal of labor, if due attention is seriously and steadily bestowed. In order more fully and conveniently to illustrate the course of the class, it will be necessary for me here to select some good author as a text book. We will then suppose Bullions' grammar to be the text book of the class, a work of great merit, and one which we shall have occasion to notice more particularly in its proper place.* The first lesson may then be given out, viz: the definitions, &c., pages 1 and 2, to be accurately committed to memory, while the part in small print, containing the definitions of the vowels, diphthongs, &c. may be read over in the class, commented on and illustrated by the teacher and the pupils be directed to read it carefully by themselves, and be in readiness at the next recitation to answer questions respecting them.

Spelling may, for the present, be passed over, the pupil being supposed to have studied that subject already.

The next lesson may be § 3, the definitions, &c., in large print to be committed accurately to memory, and care being taken by the teacher, when giving out the lesson, to see that words needing explanation are explained, and the meaning clearly comprehended. In order to illustrate the classification of words under different heads,

* The work referred to is "The Principles of English Grammar," &c., pp. 216.

and *parts* of speech, some familiar remarks may be made respecting classification in general, and the principles on which it is made; and reference may be made to natural history, showing that although individual objects are numerous, and almost infinitely varied, yet they are capable of being arranged in a few classes, according to some points in which all the individuals of the same class agree, and by which they are distinguished from those of another class, as animals, vegetables and minerals, with the numerous subdivisions of each. Or reference may be made to the pupils in a school, who, though numerous, are arranged in few classes.

In like manner the words that make up a language, though very numerous and vastly different in their orthography and meaning, yet, as many of them agree in certain properties, in which they differ again from other words, they are capable of being arranged, and are arranged under a few heads or classes called *parts of speech*. Some, for example, are names of objects; others are not names but are used to express qualities of names, &c. Some familiar remarks of this kind, occasionally interspersed, serve not only to interest the pupil and impress the fact so illustrated on his mind, but an intelligent and skilful teacher will by means of such illustrations call the attention of his pupils to remarks they never thought of before, though they have always been before their eyes, and in this manner train them to habits of reflecting, comparing, classifying and reasoning for themselves. The pleasure which a happy illustration gives to the pupils, if thereby the thing illustrated is clearly understood, will soon be manifested by the delight expressed in their countenances.

These definitions being now accurately committed to the memory and recited, together with those from the beginning of the book in review, the next lesson may be § 4, in giving out which, some remarks may be made respecting this class of words: that it is the smallest class consisting of two words easily remembered; that some languages have this class and some have not; the reasons of the names *definite* and *indefinite*; the different forms of the indefinite and the manner in which they are used. These things being committed to memory and well understood, the pupils will forthwith go through the exercises on the article, as directed in the text book, applying the knowledge they have already acquired.

They may then be directed to point out and name the articles in any piece of composition, and show their use in every place, telling why the definite is used in this place and the indefinite in that; *a* in one place and *an* in another. Such exercises, though simple and easy, interest the pupil, call the thoughts into action and prepare the mind for greater efforts.

Having perfectly mastered this, and repeatedly gone over all that goes before, the class may be told that they are now to be made acquainted with a very large and important class of words called

NOUNS.

That this is the name given in grammar to all those words which are names of things, and that it is by this that they are distinguished from all other words; that every word which is the name of any

thing we can see, hear, speak of, think of, &c., is a noun, and if a word is not the name of something it is not a noun; that names are of two kinds; that some names are common to things of the same sort, as *man*, *woman*, &c., and that others are appropriated to individuals of a class, as *John*, *Helen*, &c.; hence nouns are divided into two classes, common and proper. The character of a noun being thus wrought into the mind, and the distinction of common and proper nouns understood, the pupils should be directed to reduce their newly acquired ideas to practice; to mention names of things which they see, &c.; and without hesitation or difficulty will be heard such words as *man*, *book*, *tree*, *house*, &c., from every tongue. With such exercises the class will be delighted, while at the same time they are thoroughly instructed, and the idea that the study is dry and irksome will be done away. As a farther exercise they may now try their skill in finding out the nouns in some piece of composition. They will probably make some mistakes, which the teacher will kindly point out and show them how they were probably made. With a little practice this will become an easy exercise, the judgment of the pupil will be improved by applying the definitions to every word and ranking it as a noun, or rejecting it from the class according as it answers to the rule by which it is to be tried, and there will be no need to resort to a dictionary or to a neighbor to find out to what class such words as the above belong. This, with review, will be sufficient for one or two recitations.* Having been made familiar with this exercise, the *properties* of the noun will next be attended to; but one at a time.

As *person*, properly speaking, is not so much a property of a noun as a mode of using it in speech—the same noun, without change of form or meaning, being of the first person according to one mode of using it—of the second, according to another, and of the third, according to another, nothing more need be said of it than is contained in § 6, till the pupil comes to the first rule of syntax.

The next property to be considered is *gender*. It may be remarked to the class, that nouns are divided into three classes, according to their relation to sex; those denoting males being called *masculine*, those denoting females, *feminine*, and those denoting neither males nor females, *neuter* or *neuter* gender, and this illustrated by proper examples. The teacher may then remark on the simplicity and beauty of the English language, above almost any other, and as before, the pupil will now be desirous of applying his knowledge, by telling the gender of every noun he sees, in which, of course, he should be indulged.

Next proceed to *number*. Explain the distinction of singular and plural; cause the rules for forming the plural to be accurately committed to memory, and then apply them by forming the plural of the list of nouns, page 13, giving the rule for each plural formed; thus, *fox*, plu. *foxes*. "Nouns ending in *s*, *sh*, *ch*, *x* or *o*, form the plural by adding *es*. *Book*, plu. *books*." "The plural is commonly formed by adding *s* to the singular," &c. By repeating the rules in this manner, every time, they will be committed to memory with

* A class should never be tasked with more than what they can master with ease. It is better to err by giving too little than too much. *Festina lente*.

little labor, and be indelibly fixed there. The 3d paragraph in this list of exercises to be used thus: "book" is singular because it denotes *one*, plu. *books*, and give the rule. "*Trees* plu. because it denotes more than one; singular, *tree*, &c. So of the rest. §§ 9 and 10 except the first part of § 9, may be passed over until the grammar is reviewed.

This being well understood, and the reviews of preceding parts kept up daily, next proceed in the same way with *case*, § 11, explaining the meaning of the term, and requiring the definitions, in large print, to be carefully committed to memory. As the nominative and objective cases of nouns are of the same form, and can be distinguished only by their use in a sentence, which the pupil is not prepared to analyze, he should not be troubled with this distinction till he comes to pages 47 and 48. The possessive having always the apostrophe, is easily distinguished. The method of using the exercises on gender, number and case, page 18, is sufficiently explained in the note. This exercise being what is called parsing a noun, should be continued until the whole class are expert in it. In all this process the pupils should be kept lively, and caused to go through these exercises rapidly as well as accurately. By so doing, a great deal can be done in a little time, and the mind kept under sufficient excitement to render it susceptible of deep impression.

By proceeding in this way, slowly but surely, thoroughly disposing of one part before proceeding to another, keeping the whole fresh in the mind from the beginning, or as far back as the teacher may deem proper, drilling repeatedly on the exercises, and applying the rules where rules are applicable, every thing belonging to the etymology of nouns, will be so familiar, so well understood, and so firmly riveted in the mind, that no farther trouble need be apprehended, and the class may now proceed to the

ADJECTIVE.

This part of speech being indeclinable in English, and having only the accident of *comparison*, all that is necessary here is to commit the definitions, and rules for comparison, and apply them. Connected with the definition, the main thing the teacher has to do, is to teach the pupil how to distinguish this part of speech from any other. It always describes a noun or pronoun, by expressing some quality or property belonging to it, and is generally placed before the word which it qualifies. Examples will best illustrate this, and for this purpose the pupil may be directed to point out the adjectives in the exercises, or in any piece of composition that may be at hand. When the idea of an adjective is once wrought into the mind of the pupil he will not find much difficulty in distinguishing it from other parts of speech; and as a pleasing exercise the whole class may have it assigned them as a lesson, on a slate or on paper, at school or at home, as may be thought best, to write all the adjectives in a given paragraph or page, with the nouns they qualify opposite them. As a technical way of assisting young children in this exercise, they may be told that any word, (the possessive case of nouns excepted) which makes sense with the word thing after it, is an adjective; as. A good thing; a bad thing. As a farther exercise, the

teacher may give the class a number of nouns to write in a column on the right hand side of the slate and ask them to write down, on the same line, all the adjectives they can think of, which will properly describe that noun, thus, black, white, dapple, bay, fat, lean, &c. horse. Or he may reverse this process, and give them a few adjectives to write in a column, on the left hand side of the slate and ask them to write on the right of each, on the same line, as many nouns as they can think of, to which the adjective will apply; thus, *beautiful*, trees, houses, garden, flower, woman, child, &c. In this way an industrious and ingenious teacher may exercise and interest the minds of his pupils, and as soon as they are acquainted with only two or three parts of speech, he may begin with these to teach them the art of composition as well as of analysis.

PRONOUNS.

The pronouns are so few in number, that all necessary to be done, is to commit to memory the names of the different classes, and the pronouns under each. This can be accurately done with little labor. The teacher, however, as elsewhere, by oral and familiar instruction, has something to do to explain, illustrate and distinguish, in which he will be assisted by the notes and observations interspersed through the grammar, remembering always to go back, and keep all fresh, by repeated rehearsals or reviews; an exercise which will be easy, and therefore pleasant, unless too much neglected. Here, as in the preceding, the pupil must reduce his newly acquired knowledge to practice. Page 28 will furnish him with suitable exercises.

THE VERB.

The first lesson on this part of grammar should be prefaced with some familiar remarks respecting this part of speech; as, that it is the most important class of words; that we cannot speak or write a sentence without a verb in some form; that it assumes more forms and is used in a greater variety of ways than any other part of speech. Hence its name, *verb*, the *word*, emphatically *the word*. It is therefore the more important that it should be thoroughly studied and understood; and that though it is the most difficult part of speech to master, yet with a little diligence and attention on their part, they may become as well acquainted with it as with any other.

The pupils may be directed to commit the definitions as their first lesson, or such portion of them as can be thoroughly mastered, and to proceed in the way above mentioned with §§ 20, 21, 22, 23. Or those in §§ 22 and 23, as well as 24, may be omitted for the present, and the class proceed from § 21 to 25 and 26; and while this process of committing is going on, the teacher should make use of the text to illustrate in a familiar way the meaning and distinguishing character of this part of speech. As a technical test, young pupils may be informed that a word that makes sense with *I* or *he* before it, is a verb. Those of more mature judgment will not stand in need of such aid. He should also point out the meaning of the terms *transitive* and *intransitive* and the distinction between the verbs so called. This distinction it is important that the pupil should understand and be able to make accurately and promptly.

This can easily be made plain even to very young children, by means of the directions given in section 19; but as children do not so readily comprehend what they read as what is told them in a plain and familiar manner, a little pains on the part of the teacher here will be well rewarded. The pupil may then be exercised in making this distinction, first in very short and simple sentences, such as those at page 47, second paragraph, and afterwards on longer ones. The formula of the verb must next be accurately committed to memory, and the pupils exercised in repeating it in every way that can be thought of, till they can do it accurately, beginning at once and going through any mood or tense that may be named, and tell at once and without hesitation in what part, i. e., in what voice, mood, tense, number, and person, any part that may be named is. It will greatly facilitate this, to teach the pupil to distinguish the tenses by their signs, and to be ready at once to tell the sign of each tense that may be named. Thus: what are the signs of the perfect indicative? Ans. Have, hast, hath or has. Of the pluperfect? Ans. Had, hadst, &c. The active voice of the verb "to love" being thus completely mastered, (and until this is done a step beyond should not be taken,) the class may be drilled in the exercises, pages 47 and 48, according to the directions there given. This being done, proceed in the same way with the verb "to be," and the passive voice of the verb "to love," which will now be accomplished with the greatest ease in a fourth part of the time that was required to commit the active voice. The class should then be thoroughly drilled in the exercises, pages 51, 52, and 56. At a subsequent period, it should be required to conjugate the irregular verbs, § 32, going through them at the rate of a page or a half page per diem, according to the capacity of the pupils.

The definitions of the adverb, preposition, conjunction and interjection, are next to be acquired, which requires no special notice, only that, as the prepositions and conjunctions are few in number, it may be as well to commit them to memory, as it is not easy for young persons to distinguish them from other words by their definitions or use.

This brings the pupil through etymology, and with ordinary diligence it may all be thoroughly done in five or six weeks, if the teacher takes pains to keep the attention of his pupils awake, and to prevent their falling into a state of mental indolence—a state of mind in which little benefit is derived from the best instruction

PARSING.

The class is now prepared for parsing etymologically in simple sentences promiscuously, and should be drilled for some time in this exercise, for the purpose of making them expert in applying the knowledge previously gained, in distinguishing the different parts of speech as they occur promiscuously in a sentence, and enabling them to tell readily their accidents or properties, using always the fewest words possible, and stating them always in the same way. Section 40 furnishes exercises for this purpose, and general directions are there given, which will be found very useful to the student. In this exercise, the class may be properly exercised for two or three weeks, and in the mean time the previous part of the grammar should be

goe over two or three times in review,—first in short portions and then in longer,—till the whole becomes so familiar that farther attention is unnecessary. By this time the class will be prepared to enter with ease, spirit and intelligence, on the next part, namely,

SYNTAX.

Here they may be told that hitherto they have been learning chiefly the character, forms, and changes of words, and analyzing sentences containing them. That they are now to be taught how to put words together in a proper manner, according to approved rules and methods. The part of grammar which teaches to do this is called *syntax*; a word that signifies combining or arranging together, viz: words in a sentence. After acquiring a correct knowledge of the definitions and general principles, §§ 43. 44, and 45, the next lesson may be Rule I., § 46. No particular effort is required in committing either this or the following rules to memory. The simple repetition of them from the book, as each sentence in the exercises under the rule is corrected, will generally be sufficient. Or they may have two or three rules assigned them to commit daily, so as in this exercise to keep in advance of the other.

It will be necessary in entering on the exercises, to point out to the pupil the precise object of each rule, as he advances; to intimate that the exercises contain violations of that rule only; that his business is to find out, in each sentence, what is contrary to the rule and to alter it accordingly. Under the first rule, for example, it may be necessary to remind the pupil that every sentence contains at least one distinct affirmation; that the *verb* is the word which makes the affirmation; and that the person or thing of which the verb affirms is its subject or nominative; and that according to the rule these must always agree in number and person; i. e., the verb must be in the same number and person with the nominative. Under Rule I., then, the business in each sentence is to find the verb and the nominative, in order to compare them and see if they agree, and if they do not, to alter the verb so as to make it agree with its nominative. In order to discover the verb and its nominative, the pupil may be directed to read the sentence and see what it means; he may then be asked, (having read the first sentence, e. g., “*I loves reading*,”) what is spoken of? Answer. *I*. What is said of *I*, or what is *I* said to do? Answer. *I* loves. Then loves is the verb and *I* its nominative; compare them and see if they are in the same number and person. Nominative *I* is the first person, and *loves* is the third person; *loves* then should be *love*, to agree with *I* in the first person. Or the teacher may proceed Socratically as follows:

Teacher Read the first sentence. *Pupil*. “*I loves reading*.”
T. Who or what is spoken of here? *P. I*. *T*. What is *I* said to do? *P. To love*. *T*. Then which word expresses the person spoken of? *P. I* is the person spoken of, and is therefore the nominative. *T*. To what verb is *I* the nominative? *P. To the verb loves*. *T*. In what should they agree according to the rule? *P. In number and person*. *T*. Do they so agree? *P. No. I* is the first person singular, and *loves* is the third. *T*. What must be done to make them agree? *P. Change loves to love*. *T*. Read the sen-

tence so corrected, and give the rule? *P.* I love reading. "A verb agrees," &c.

Having gone through all the exercises under this rule, in this way or in any other way the teacher may find best calculated to communicate the idea, they may begin again and go over the whole without being questioned; thus, *loves* should be *love* in the first person and singular number, because *I*, its nominative, is in the first person and singular number, "A verb must agree," &c. After this the whole may be read over by the pupils, each reading a sentence, and only marking the corrected word with greater emphasis; thus, "I *love* reading;" "a soft answer *turns* away wrath." &c., giving the rule as before; in this way a class will easily proceed at the rate of one rule a day, reviewing the preceding as before. Every part being thoroughly understood as they proceed, they will take pleasure in it, their perception and power of reasoning will every day expand and become more vigorous, and at the end of the course their improvement will be astonishing to themselves.

After going through the rules of syntax, a farther advance and exercise of the powers of the pupils will be found in *Syntactical parsing*, sufficiently explained in § 84, and in the promiscuous exercises in § 85, all of which, being corrected, may be used for exercises in syntactical parsing, which should be followed up by parsing the best authors, both in prose and poetry, while they should at the same time be carried through the subsequent parts of the grammar.

As soon as a class gets through the rules of syntax, they should be instructed in short and simple exercises in composition. By so doing they will furnish exercises for themselves, and should be led to correct their own mistakes, in the same way in which they corrected the exercises under the rules.

TEXT BOOKS.

It is not my intention to attempt an elaborate review of the principal works on this subject, as the discussion would extend these remarks, (which are already too prolix,) to an inconvenient length. Authors can generally set forth the merits of their own productions, and they seldom fail to exhibit the faults and defects of rival works, with peculiar acumen, and with eloquence hardly to be expected from persons less interested. It is therefore not probable that any literary production of even moderate pretensions, will escape without a little wholesome criticism.

Early in the year 1842, wishing to select some work on the subject of English grammar which I could recommend as a text book to the schools under my superintendency; I collected all the works on the subject which seemed to have any considerable claims to consideration, in order to make a comparison of their respective merits. A cursory examination was sufficient to induce me to throw aside several as materially defective and unsuitable, but I retained upon my table for a more thorough inspection those of Kirkham, Hazen, Pierce, Brown and Bullions. After a patient and protracted examination, the first three in the order in which they are mentioned above for reasons which it would be too tedious to mention, were laid aside. Being satisfied of the eminent merits of the works of

Bullions and **Brown**, and certain that I should make choice of one of them for the purpose I had in view, I reserved them for a careful comparison, not with a view to ascertain their intrinsic value, of which I was already satisfied, it having been the object of my first and second perusal, but that I might determine which would be the most suitable for general use in our common schools. Having made the comparison with as much candor and ability as I could bring to the task, I came to the following conclusion: that as treatises on grammar the works were of nearly equal merits, that of **Brown** being somewhat more copious in its exercises and full and argumentative in its notes and observations on the language, while **Bullions'** is far superior to the former in conciseness and simplicity of style and in clearness of arrangement. The rules are well expressed and the principles clearly developed, while the notes and philosophical observations are fully sufficient, without that redundancy which characterizes the corresponding parts of the grammar of **Mr. Brown**, and increases its volume to such a degree as to render it truly appalling to beginners.

The grammar of **Dr. Bullions** has also the advantage of being suitable for young students and those commencing the study, thus saving the expense of a "first book" or "first lines," while at the same time it is a complete grammar of the language, and available for every purpose for which **Mr. Brown's** can possibly be used. It is also one of a "series;" and a pupil having studied it, can take up the grammars of the Latin and Greek, by the same excellent author, in which the rules and arrangements, so far as the principles and analogies of the language will admit, are the same, and proceed with a facility under other circumstances not attainable. This is a consideration of no small importance to those who may wish to advance from the common school to the academy and the college. But I cannot here set forth all that influenced my mind in coming to the conclusion that the grammar of **Dr. Bullions** was superior to any other I had examined as a text book for use in our common schools. Suffice it to say, that I recommended it for use in the schools in this county.

Since the subject of these observations was assigned me by the Department, I have made another investigation, and come to the same conclusion.

Respectfully submitted.

R. K. FINCH,

Sup. of Com. Schools for the Co. of Steuben.

BATH, Nov. 5, 1843.

 Just published, by **PRATT, WOODFORD & Co.**

N. Y., (late **ROBINSON, PRATT & Co.,**) "**Practical Lessons on English Grammar and Composition; for Young Beginners:**" pp. 132
By **REV P BULLIONS, D. D.**

ADVERTISEMENT.

SUPERIOR TEXT BOOKS.

THE attention of Teachers, School Committees, and all interested in good education, is solicited to the following School Books, which are for sale by booksellers generally, viz :

BULLIONS' SERIES OF GRAMMARS:

PRACTICAL LESSONS IN ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.
 THE PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR, FOR SCHOOLS.
 LATIN LESSONS, WITH EXERCISES, BY G. SPENCER, A. M.
 THE PRINCIPLES OF LATIN GRAMMAR.
 LATIN READER, WITH THE IDIOMS AND VOCABULARY.
 CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES, WITH NOTES AND VOCABULARY.
 THE PRINCIPLES OF GREEK GRAMMAR.
 A GREEK READER, WITH IDIOMS, NOTES AND VOCABULARY.

These Books have obtained a sterling reputation throughout the country. They are found to be remarkably clear and simple, and to contain every thing necessary to good scholarship, without redundancy. The definitions of the various languages being expressed, as far as possible, in the same terms, the pupil progresses with rapidity, and saves months of the time spent in using the usual class books. In fact, Dr. Bullions' books are precisely adapted for teaching, and save both time and expense, being sold at low prices, though made in the best style. They are in use in some of the best schools and colleges it is believed in every State in the Union. They are recommended by—

Hon. J. A. DIX, <i>U. S. Senator.</i>	Professor HOYT, <i>of Lima Institute.</i>
Bishop POTTER, <i>formerly of Union College.</i>	Rev. J. LUDLOW, <i>Provost of Pennsylvania University.</i>
Rev. J. W. ALEXANDER, D. D., <i>of Princeton College.</i>	THOMAS EUSTAW, Esq., <i>of St. Louis.</i>
Rev. B. HALE, D. D., <i>President of Geneva College.</i>	Professor J. GREENE, <i>of Madison University, Indiana.</i>
Rev. C. MASON, D. D., <i>of New York University.</i>	President E. H. NEVIN, <i>of Franklin College, Ohio.</i>
Professor WHEATON, <i>of Middletown College.</i>	President T. H. BIGGS, <i>of Cincinnati College.</i>
Rev. H. BANNISTER, D. D., <i>of Oneida Institute.</i>	Professor W. H. MCGUFFEY.

And a great number of eminent scholars and teachers in Kentucky, Tennessee and other States.

ADVERTISEMENT.

COOPER'S VIRGIL, WITH ENGLISH NOTES, MYTHOLOGICAL, BIOGRAPHICAL, HISTORICAL, &c.

THE ILLUSTRATIVE DEFINER, a Dictionary of words in common use; is intended to teach children, by examples and by exercises in composition, the true, definite meaning of words, and exhibits all Mr. Gallaudet's well-known capacity as an instructor of youth.

THE PICTORAL SPELLING BOOK, by R. Bentley, is a most beautiful and attractive work for children.

OLNEY'S SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY AND ATLAS. This work, well-known in almost every village in the United States, has recently been revised. The Atlas is entirely new, and contains numerous maps, exhibiting every quarter of the globe on a large scale, and showing the relative situation of countries more clearly than any other atlas. It contains also an ancient map, exhibiting almost the entire portion of the world embraced in Ancient History. The publishers believe that a thorough examination will convince the practical teacher that this work is superior for use to any other, and it possesses a permanent value for daily reference. It is easy of comprehension, and conducts the pupil in a most natural manner to a competent knowledge of Geography. It is deemed superfluous to publish recommendations of a work so generally known. It is intended that it shall continue to deserve the great popularity which it has always maintained, and that the prices shall be as reasonable as can be asked.

BOOKS ON THE SCIENCES, by J. L. COMSTOCK, M. D.

COMSTOCK'S SYSTEM OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

COMSTOCK'S ELEMENTS OF CHEMISTRY.

COMSTOCK'S ELEMENTS OF BOTANY.

COMSTOCK'S OUTLINES OF PHYSIOLOGY.

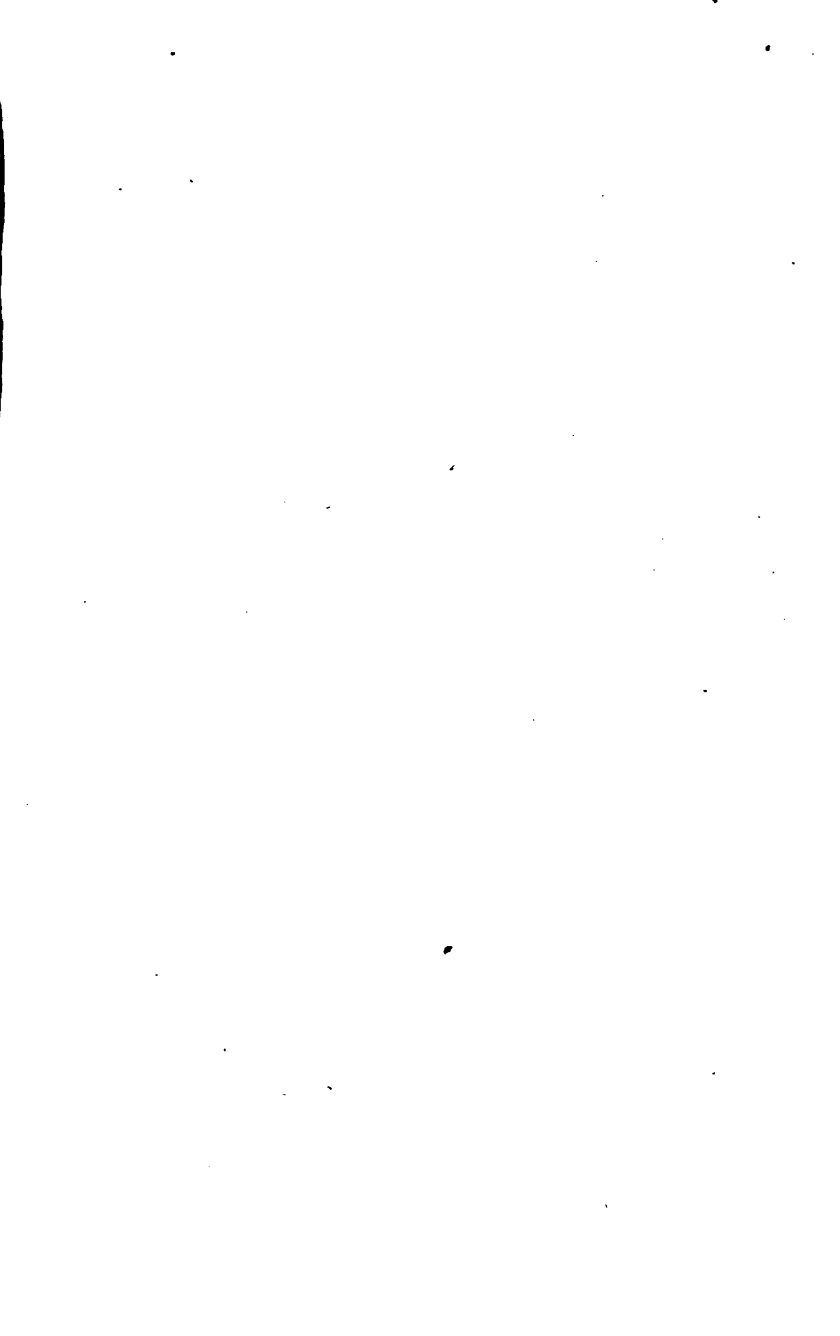
COMSTOCK'S ELEMENTS OF MINERALOGY.

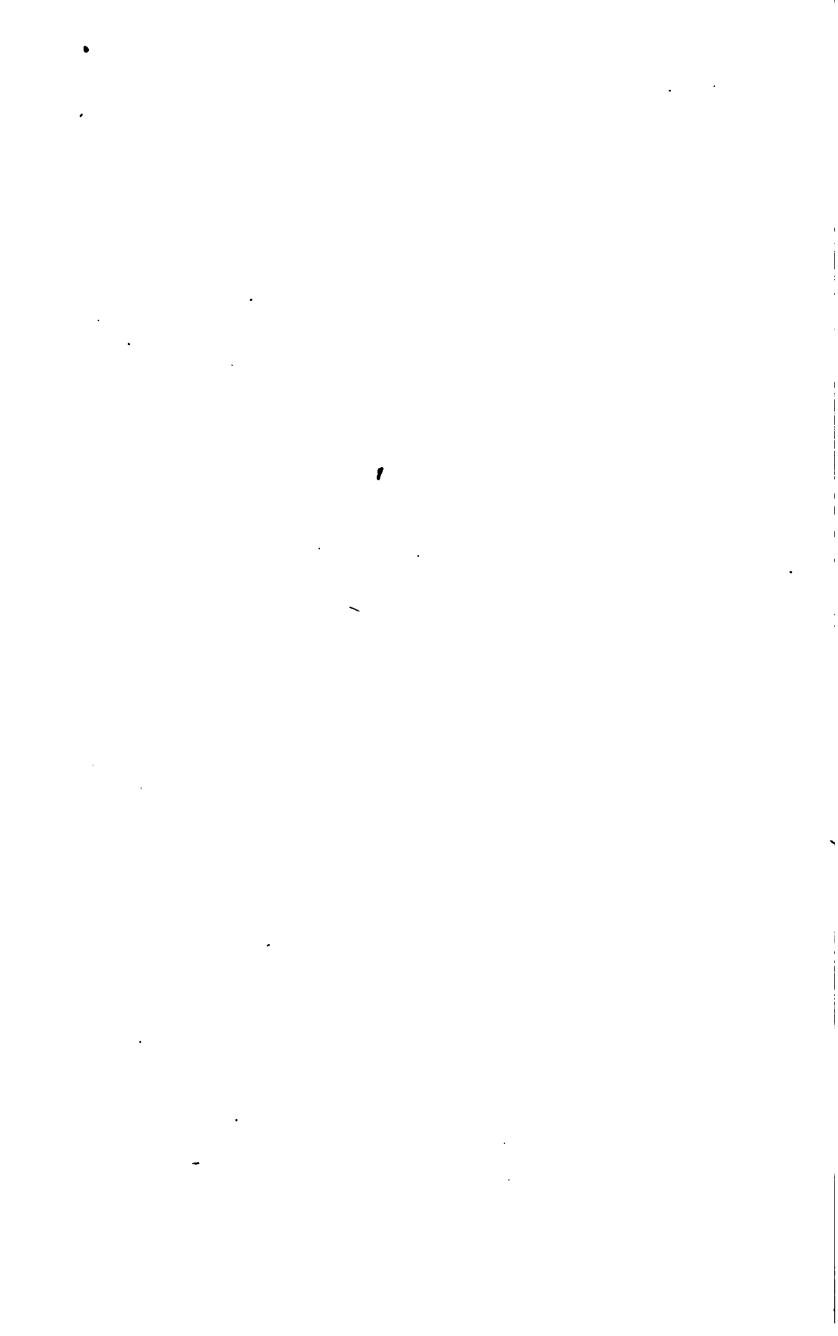
This series of books is in so general use that the publishers would only take occasion to state that it is found superior to any in use in Europe. The Philosophy has already been republished in Scotland; translated for the use of schools in Prussia; and portions of the series are now in course of publication in London. Such testimony, in addition to the general good testimony of teachers in this country, is sufficient. The Elements of Chemistry has been entirely revised by the author, the present year, and contains all the late discoveries.

Published by

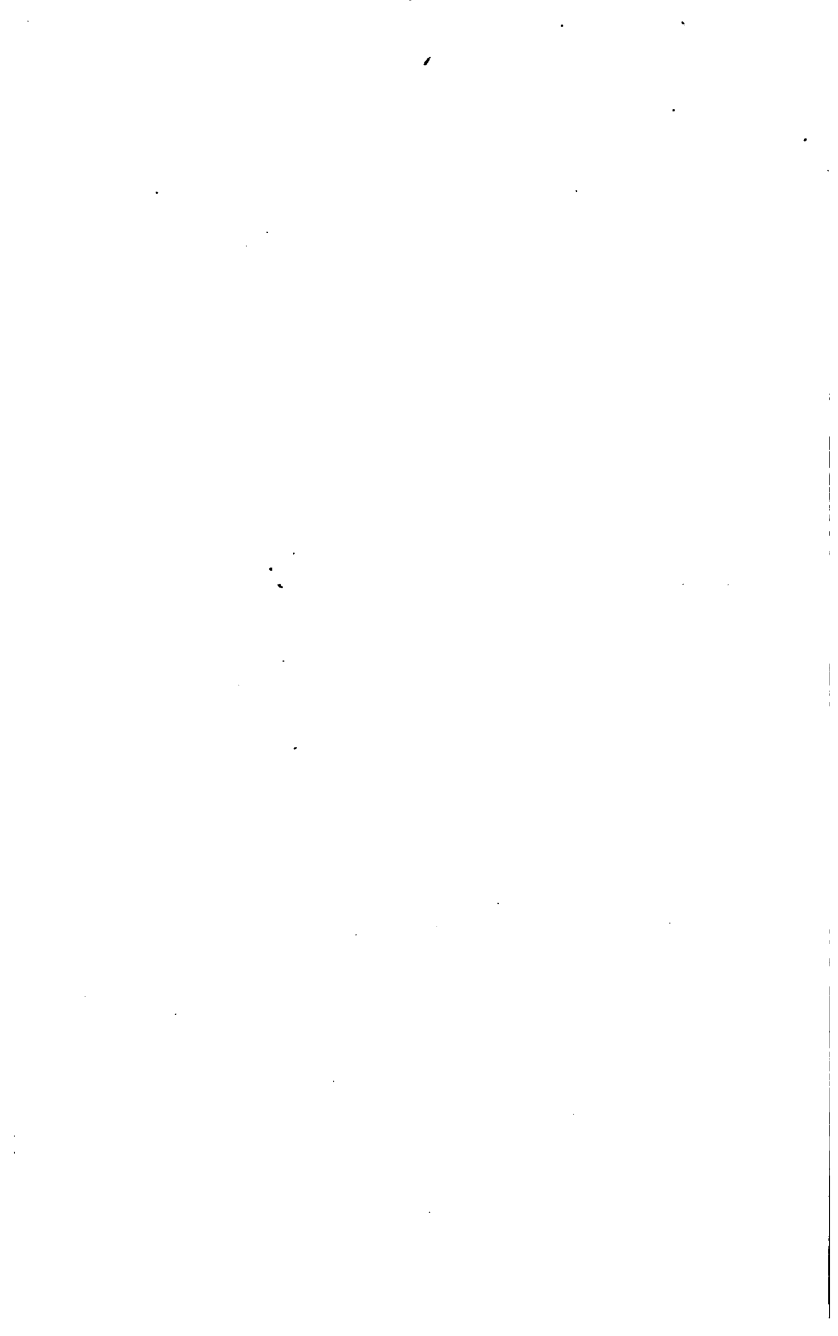
PRATT, WOODFORD & CO.

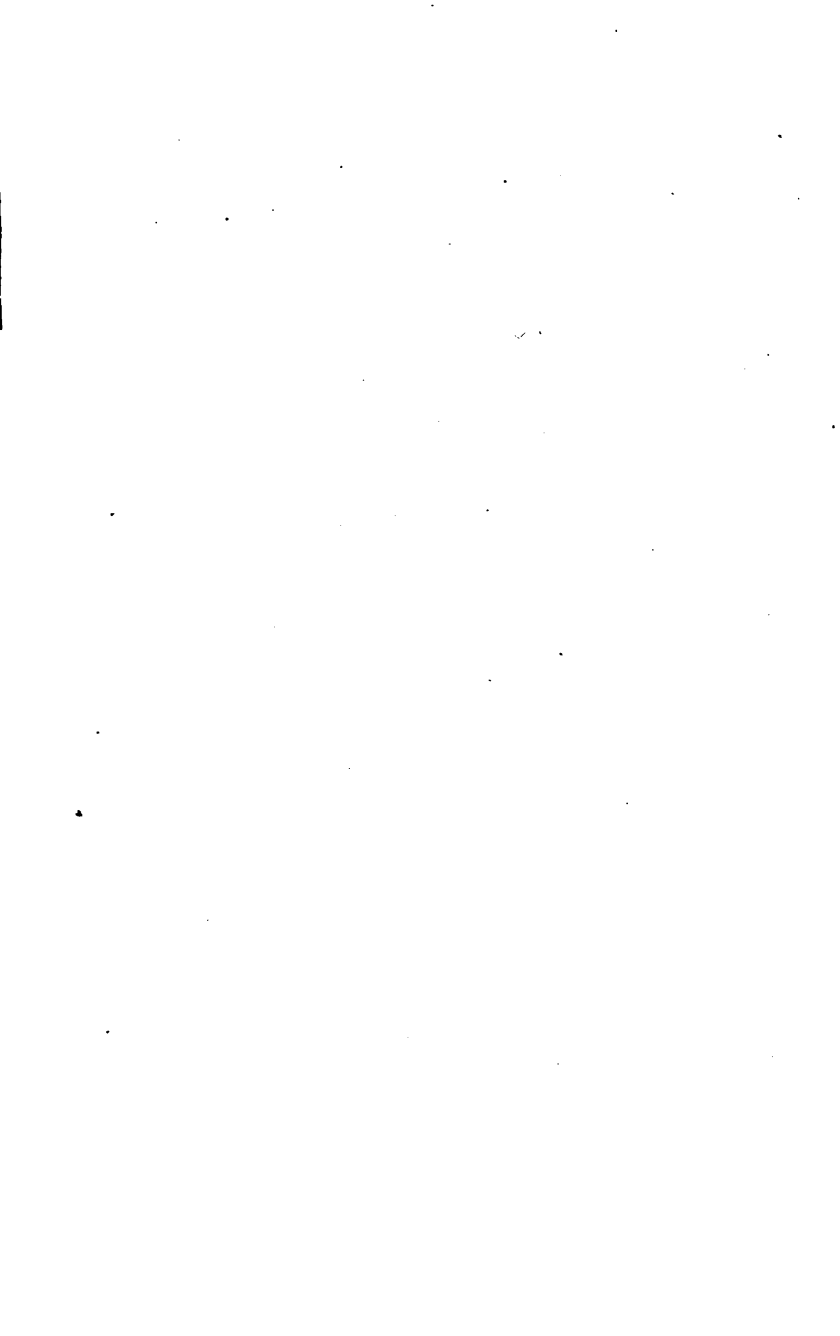
159 Pearl street, N. Y.

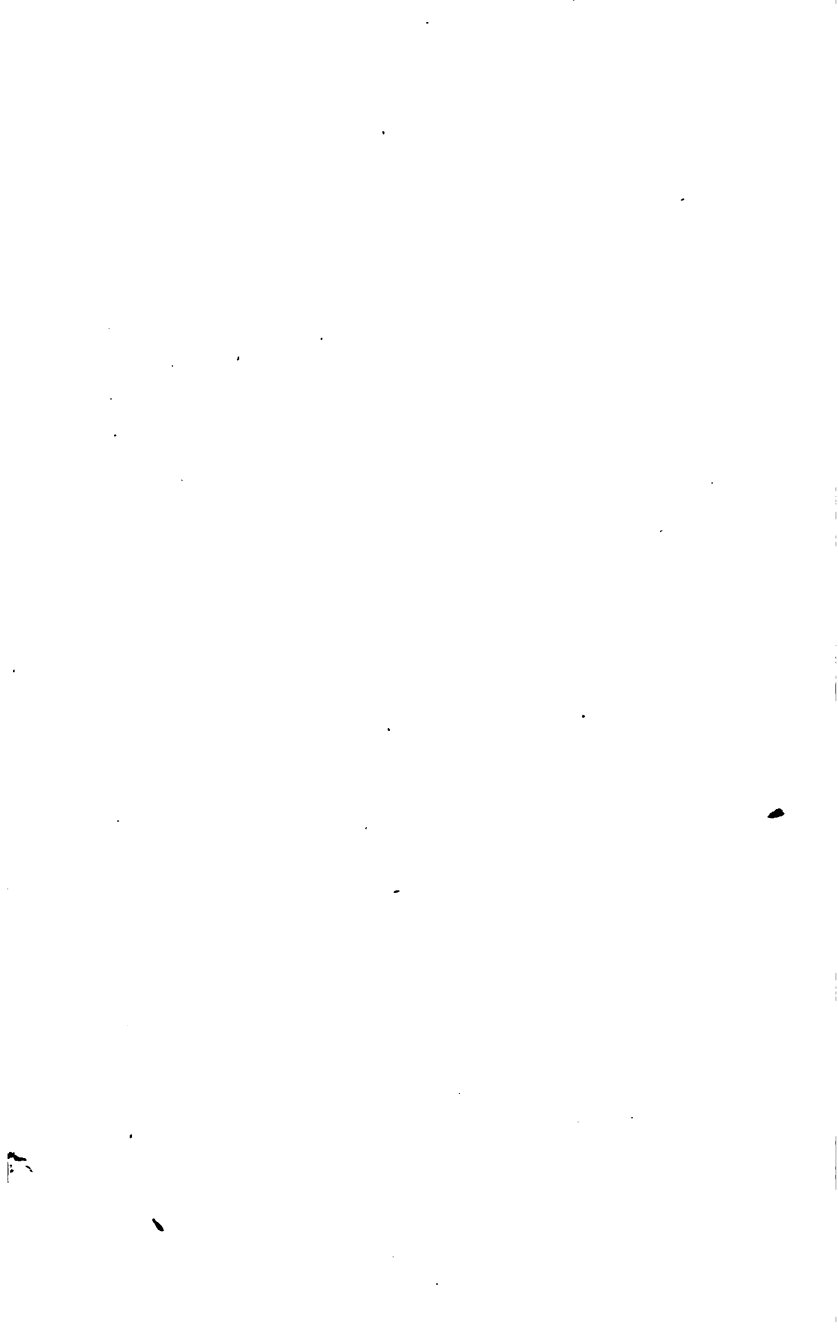












How
my

This book should be returned to
the Library on or before the last date
stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred
by retaining it beyond the specified
time.

Please return promptly.

